



FORTINET®
High Performance Network Security



FortiOS™ Handbook - What's New

VERSION 5.6.3



FORTINET DOCUMENT LIBRARY

<http://docs.fortinet.com>

FORTINET VIDEO GUIDE

<http://video.fortinet.com>

FORTINET BLOG

<https://blog.fortinet.com>

CUSTOMER SERVICE & SUPPORT

<https://support.fortinet.com>

<http://cookbook.fortinet.com/how-to-work-with-fortinet-support/>

FORTIGATE COOKBOOK

<http://cookbook.fortinet.com>

FORTINET TRAINING SERVICES

<http://www.fortinet.com/training>

FORTIGUARD CENTER

<http://www.fortiguard.com>

FORTICAST

<http://forticast.fortinet.com>

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

<http://www.fortinet.com/doc/legal/EULA.pdf>

FORTINET PRIVACY POLICY

<https://www.fortinet.com/corporate/about-us/privacy.html>

FEEDBACK

Email: techdocs@fortinet.com



January 24, 2018

FortiOS™ Handbook - What's New in FortiOS 5.6.3

01-563-117003-20180124

Executive Summary

This chapter briefly highlights some of the higher profile new FortiOS 5.6 features, some of which have been enhanced for FortiOS 5.6.1 and FortiOS 5.6.3.

FortiGate VM enhancements for AWS, Azure, Google, SDN connectors and more

The realm of virtual computing has become mainstream and not only does this mean that security appliances can also be virtual, there is also a requirement for security appliances in a virtual environment. These environments can be the publicly available platforms such as Amazon Web Services, Azure and Google Cloud Platform or they can be Software Defined Networks (SDN) such as those made by Cisco, HP, Nuage and OpenStack. For that reason, not only is the number of Virtual FortiOS variations growing along with what they can do, a number of the new features being introduced deal with integrating FortiOS into these environments. See [FortiGate VM enhancements for AWS, Azure, Google, SDN connectors and more \(5.6.3\) on page 163](#).

Recipes are now being also published for the cloud-based and SDN environments on the Fortinet Cookbook website.

- <http://cookbook.fortinet.com/amazon-web-services-aws/>
- [- <http://cookbook.fortinet.com/microsoft-azure/>
- <http://cookbook.fortinet.com/nuage-vsp/>](http://cookbook.fortinet.com/cisco-ac/)

Security Fabric enhancements

Security Fabric features and functionality continue to evolve. New features include improved performance and integration, a security audit function that finds possible problems with your network and recommends solutions, security fabric dashboard widgets, improved device detection, and the remote login to other FortiGates on the fabric. See [New Security Fabric features on page 26](#).

Security Fabric Audit

The Security Fabric Audit allows you to analyze your Security Fabric deployment to identify potential vulnerabilities and highlight best practices that could be used to improve your network's overall security and performance. See [Security Fabric Audit and Fabric Score on page 38](#).

Re-designed Dashboard

The Dashboard has been enhanced to show more information with greater flexibility and more functionality. See [New Dashboard Features on page 46](#) for details.

NGFW Policy Mode

You can operate your FortiGate in NGFW policy mode to simplify applying Application control and Web Filtering to firewall traffic. See [NGFW Policy Mode \(397035\) on page 64](#).

Flow-based inspection with profile-based NGFW mode is the default inspection mode in FortiOS 5.6.

Transparent web proxy

In addition to the Explicit Web Proxy, FortiOS now supports a Transparent web proxy. You can use the transparent proxy to apply web authentication to HTTP traffic accepted by a firewall policy. See [Transparent web proxy \(386474\) on page 56](#).

Controlled failover between wireless controllers

Administrators can now define the role of the primary and secondary controllers on the FortiAP unit, allowing the unit to decide the order in which the FortiAP selects a FortiGate unit and how the FortiAP unit fails over to a backup FortiGate unit if the primary FortiGate fails. See [Controlled failover between wireless controllers on page 75](#).

FortiView Endpoint Vulnerability chart

A new FortiView chart that tracks vulnerability events detected by the FortiClients running on all devices registered with the FortiGate. See [New FortiView Endpoint Vulnerability Scanner chart \(378647\) on page 68](#).

FortiClient Profile changes

FortiClient profiles have been re-organized and now use the FortiGate to warn or quarantine endpoints that are not compliant with a FortiClient profile. See [FortiClient Profile changes \(386267, 375049\)](#).

Adding Internet services to firewall policies

Internet service objects can be added to firewall policies instead of destination addresses and services. See [Adding Internet services to firewall policies \(389951\)](#).

Source and destination NAT in a single Firewall policy

Extensions to VIPs support more NAT options and other enhancements. See [Combining source and destination NAT in the same policy \(388718\)](#).

Other highlights

- Application Control is a free service
- Real time logging to FortiAnalyzer and FortiCloud
- Multiple PSK for WPA Personal (393320)
- VXLAN support (289354)
- NP6 Host Protection Engine (HPE) adds protection for DDoS attacks (363398)
- FortiGate Logs can be sent to syslog servers in Common Event Format (CEF) (300128)
- New PPPoE features

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Executive Summary	3
FortiGate VM enhancements for AWS, Azure, Google, SDN connectors and more	3
Security Fabric enhancements	3
Security Fabric Audit	3
Re-designed Dashboard	4
NGFW Policy Mode	4
Transparent web proxy	4
Controlled failover between wireless controllers	4
FortiView Endpoint Vulnerability chart	4
FortiClient Profile changes	4
Adding Internet services to firewall policies	5
Source and destination NAT in a single Firewall policy	5
Other highlights	5
Change Log	21
Introduction	23
How this guide is organized	23
New Security Fabric features	26
Setting up the Security Fabric in FortiOS 5.6	26
Security Fabric between remote networks by enabling FortiTelemetry for IPsec VPN interfaces	26
Re-designed Security Fabric setup	27
Improved Security Fabric Settings page	28
Security Fabric dashboard widgets	29
Physical and Logical FortiView improvements	30
Updated Physical and Logical Topology legend	30
New option to minimize the Topology	31
Security Fabric Topology shows new resource information alerts	31
SD-WAN information added to Security Fabric topology	32
SD-WAN Monitor Support added to Security Fabric (417210)	33
FortiCache support for the Security Fabric (435830)	33
Enhanced Security Fabric audit tests for FortiGuard licenses (409156)	34
FortiClient Vulnerability Score	35
FortiView Consolidation	35
Remote login to downstream FortiGates	36

Logging Consolidation and Improvements	36
Sending all logs to a single FortiAnalyzer	36
Data Exchange with FortiAnalyzer	36
Retrieving Monitor Information	37
Log Settings	37
Device Tree	37
Security Fabric Audit and Fabric Score	38
What is the Security Fabric Audit?	38
Why should you run a Security Fabric Audit?	38
Running a Security Fabric Audit	38
Logging for the Security Fabric Audit	40
Security Fabric Audit Checks	41
Firmware & Subscriptions	41
Internal Segmentation Firewall (ISFW)	41
Endpoint Compliance	42
Security Best Practices	43
Security Fabric Score	44
New Dashboard Features	46
Licenses	48
FortiCloud	49
Security Fabric	49
Administrators	50
CPU	50
Memory	50
Sessions	51
Bandwidth	52
Virtual Machine	52
FortiExplorer for iOS	54
Transparent web proxy (386474)	56
Using the Transparent proxy	56
More about the transparent proxy	58
Flat policies	58
Authentication	59
New Proxy Type	59
IP pools support	60
SOCKSv5	60
Forwarding	60
Support for explicit proxy address objects & groups into IPv4 firewall policies	60
Support application service in the proxy based on HTTP requests	60
CLI	61
NGFW Policy Mode (397035)	64
NGFW policy mode and NAT	64

Application control in NGFW policy mode.....	65
Web Filtering in NGFW mode.....	66
Other NGFW policy mode options.....	67
New FortiView Endpoint Vulnerability Scanner chart (378647)	68
FortiClient Profile changes (386267, 375049)	69
Default FortiClient profile.....	69
Endpoint vulnerability scanning.....	69
System compliance.....	70
Security posture checking.....	70
Application Control is a free service	72
IPS / Application Control logging performance.....	72
Real time logging to FortiAnalyzer and FortiCloud	73
Reliable Logging updated for real-time functionality (378937).....	73
FortiGate Logs can be sent to syslog servers in Common Event Format (CEF) (300128)	74
Controlled failover between wireless controllers	75
1+1 Wireless Controller HA.....	75
Primary and secondary ACs.....	75
1+1 redundancy.....	75
Multiple PSK for WPA Personal (393320)	76
Hotspot 2.0 (443988) - FortiOS 5.6.3	77
VXLAN support (289354)	81
VTEP (VXLAN Tunnel End Point) support (289354).....	81
VXLAN support for multiple remote IPs (398959).....	82
New PPPoE features	83
PPPoE dynamic gateway support (397628).....	83
Support multiple PPPoE connections on a single interface (363958).....	83
Adding Internet services to firewall policies (389951)	86
CLI.....	86
GUI.....	86
Combining source and destination NAT in the same policy (388718)	87
NP6 Host Protection Engine (HPE) adds protection for DDoS attacks (363398)	89
New feature catalog (5.6.3, 5.6.1 and 5.6)	91
Getting Started (5.6.3).....	91
Administrator password changes (414927).....	91
Support FortiOS to allow user to select domain when logging a FG into FortiCloud (452350).....	91
Getting Started (5.6.1).....	91
VM License visibility improvement (423347).....	91
FortiView Dashboard Widget (434179).....	92
Controls added to GUI CLI console (422623).....	93

FortiExplorer icon enhancement (423838).....	93
Getting Started (5.6).....	93
Change to CLI console (396225).....	93
System Information Dashboard widget WAN IP Information enhancement (401464).....	93
CLI and GUI changes to display FortiCare registration information (395254).....	94
Improved GUI for Mobile Screen Size & Touch Interface (355558).....	95
Setup Wizard removed.....	95
Authentication (5.6.3).....	96
Certificate Import page updates (267949).....	96
Improvements to the execute fortitoken import command (401979).....	96
Improved 2FA workflow in GUI (405487, 409100, 444430, 446856, 456752).....	96
Support FTM Push when FortiAuthenticator is the authentication server (408273, 438314).....	96
Support exact match for subject and CN fields in peer user (416359).....	96
FortiToken GUI improvement (435229).....	97
Improve FTM Push notification workflow (436642, 448734).....	97
FortiClient shares Social ID data with FortiOS (438610).....	97
Wildcard certificate support/handling for SAN/CN reference identifiers (440307).....	97
Support for FTP and TFTP to update certificates (441695).....	97
Global option to enable/disable SHA1 algorithm inSSH key exchanges (444827).....	97
Support for HTTP tunnel authentication (449406).....	98
Authentication (5.6.1).....	98
IPv6 RADIUS Support (309235, 402437, 439773).....	98
Full certificate chain CRL checking (407988).....	99
New option under user > setting to allow/forbid SSL renegotiation in firewall authentication (386595).....	99
New option to allow spaces in RADIUS DN format (422978).....	99
Added LDAP filter when group-member-check is user-attr (403140).....	99
Added Refresh button to the LDAP browser (416649).....	100
Differentiate DN option for user authentication and membership searching (435791).....	100
FTM Push when FAC is auth server (408273).....	100
Non-blocking LDAP authentication (433700).....	100
Manual certificate SCEP renewal (423997).....	100
More detailed RADIUS responses shown in connectivity test (434303).....	101
User group authentication timeout range increased to 30 days (378085).....	101
Authentication (5.6).....	102
FortiToken Mobile Push (397912, 408273, 399839, 404872).....	102
Support V4 BIOS certificate (392960).....	102
Support extendedKeyUsage for x.509 certificates (390393).....	103
Administrator name added to system event log (386395).....	103
Support RSA-4096 bit key-length generation (380278).....	103
New commands added to config user ldap to set UPN processing method and filter name (383561).....	103

User authentication max timeout setting change (378085).....	104
Changes to Authentication Settings > Certificates GUI (374980).....	104
Password for private key configurable in both GUI and CLI (374593).....	104
RADIUS password encoding (365145).....	104
RSSO supports Delegated-IPv6-Prefix and Framed-IPv6-Prefix (290990).....	104
FortiOS Carrier (5.6.3).....	104
Improved CLI attribute name under 'gtp.message-filter-v0v1' (452813).....	105
Improved GTP performance (423332).....	105
FortiOS Carrier (5.6.1).....	108
GTP enhancement and GTP Performance Improvement. (423332).....	108
Device identification (5.6).....	111
Changed default for device-identification-active-scan to disabled (380837).....	111
Diagnose command changes (5.6.1).....	112
crash dump improvement on i386/X86_64 (396580).....	112
LLDP diagnose commands easier to execute (413102).....	112
New command to monitor IPS stats (414496).....	112
Additional information in FortiGate 30E model diagnose command (422266).....	113
New diagnose sys fips kat-error options (440186).....	113
Diagnose command changes (5.6).....	113
Add missing "diag npu np6 ..." Commands (305808).....	113
Diagnose command to show firewall service cache (355819).....	113
Diagnose command to show crash history and adjust crash interval (366691).....	114
diagnose switch-controller commands (368197).....	115
Diagnose commands for monitoring NAT sessions (376546).....	115
SIP diagnose command improvements (376853).....	117
Diagnose command to get AV virus statistics (378870).....	117
Diagnose command to get remote FortiSwitch trunk information (379329).....	118
help provided for diagnose debug application csfd (379675).....	118
New IPS engine diagnose commands (381371).....	119
New AV engine diagnose commands (383352).....	119
NPU diagnose command now included HPE info in results (384692).....	120
clear checksum log files (diag sys ha checksum log clear) (385905).....	120
new diagnose command to delete avatars (388634).....	120
CID signatures have been improved for DHCP and CDP (389350, 409436).....	120
diagnose command to calculate socket memory usage (392655).....	121
FortiGuard can determine a FortiGate's location from its public IP address (393972).....	121
AWS bootstrapping diagnose commands (394158).....	122
Diagnose command to aid in conserver mode issues (394856).....	123
Diagnose commands to display FortiCare registration information (395254).....	123
new diag test app csfd options (395302).....	124
new 'AND' and 'OR' filter capabilities for debug flow addr (398985).....	124
Improve wad debug trace and crash log information (400454).....	124

diagnose hardware test added to additional models (403571).....	124
diag sys sip-proxy config profile --> diag sys sip-proxy config profiles (404874).....	125
diag debug flow changes (405348).....	125
improve wad memory diagnose process (408236).....	125
New daemon watchdog framework in forticron (409243).....	125
Output from diagnose wad debug command filterable(410069).....	125
DNS log improvements (410132).....	127
Explicit web proxy (5.6).....	128
Explicit proxy supports multiple incoming ports and port ranges (402775, 398687).....	128
Explicit proxy supports IP pools (402221).....	128
Option to remove unsupported encoding from HTTP headers (392908).....	128
New authentication process for explicit web proxying (386474, 404355).....	128
Added Internet services to explicit proxy policies (386182).....	129
Virtual WAN link in an explicit proxy firewall policy (385849, 396780).....	129
Added application ID and category setting on the explicit proxy enabled service (379330).....	129
Explicit Proxy - populate pac-file-url in transparent mode (373977).....	129
SSL deep inspection OCSP support for Explicit Proxy (365843).....	130
Timed out authentication requests are now logged (357098).....	130
Firewall (5.6.3).....	131
Multi-port support for Explicit Proxy (402775).....	131
Nturbo support CAPWAP traffic and fix IPsec IPv6 firewall policy code typo (290708) (423323).....	131
Toggling SNAT in Central SNAT policies (434981).....	131
Improved wildcard support for firewall fqdn (444646).....	132
Policy Matching based on Referrer Headers and Query Strings (446257).....	133
Firewall (5.6.1).....	135
Improvement to NAT column in Policy List Display (305575).....	135
GUI support for adding Internet-services to proxy-policies (405509).....	135
Inline editing of profile groups on policy (409485).....	136
Rename "action" to "nat" in firewall.central-snat-map (412427).....	137
Explicit proxy supports session-based Kerberos authentication (0437054).....	137
Firewall (5.6).....	137
Optimization of the firewall Service cache (355819).....	137
New CLI option to prevent packet order problems for sessions offloaded to NP4 or NP6 (365497).....	137
GUI changes to Central NAT (371516).....	138
Max value for Firewall User authentication changed (378085).....	138
Changes to default SSL inspection configuration (380736).....	138
Add firewall policy comment field content to log messages (387865).....	139
Learning mode changes profile type to single (387999).....	139
MAC address authentication in firewall policies and captive portals (391739).....	139
Display resolved IP addresses for FQDN in policy list (393927).....	140

Added comment for acl-policy, interface-policy and DoS-policy (396569).....	140
Internet service settings moved to more logical place in CLI (397029).....	141
Certificate key size selection (397883).....	142
AWS API integration for dynamic firewall address object (400265).....	143
Internet service configuration (405518).....	144
Changes to SSL abbreviate handshake (407544).....	144
NGFW mode in the VDOM - NAT & SSL Inspection considerations (407547).....	145
Support HTTP policy for flow-based inspection (411666).....	147
Support for CA chain downloading to improve certificate verification (369270).....	147
Managed FortiSwitch OS 3.6.0 (FortiOS 5.6.3).....	147
Firewall policy now required for RADIUS traffic (434470).....	147
STP root guard (376015).....	148
STP BPDU guard (406182).....	148
FortiSwitch log message changes (438738).....	148
Support FSW BPDU Guard (442921) (442922).....	149
Managed switch CLI features added to GUI (448722).....	150
Added unit in help-text when setting max-rate/min-rate under switch-controller qos queue-policy (449487) (449869).....	150
Added FortiSwitch factory-reset functionality to the FortiOS GUI (393205).....	150
Managed FortiSwitch OS 3.6.0 (FortiOS 5.6.1).....	150
Simplified method to convert a FortiSwitch to standalone mode (393205).....	150
Quarantines (410828).....	151
Assign untagged VLANs to a managed FortiSwitch port (410828).....	153
View, create, and assign multiple 802.1X policy definitions (408389 and 403901).....	153
Enable and disable switch-controller access VLANs through FortiGate (406718).....	154
Override the admin password for all managed FortiSwitches (416261).....	154
Configure an MCLAG with managed FortiSwitches (366617).....	155
Configure QoS with managed FortiSwitches (373581).....	155
Reset PoE-enabled ports from the GUI (387417).....	157
Adding preauthorized FortiSwitches (382774).....	157
Managed FortiSwitch OS 3.6.0 (FortiOS 5.6).....	157
IGMP snooping (387515).....	157
User-port link aggregation groups (378470).....	158
DHCP blocking, STP, and loop guard on managed FortiSwitch ports (375860).....	158
Switch profile enhancements (387398).....	158
Number of switches per FortiGate based on model (388024).....	159
Miscellaneous configuration option changes.....	159
Additional GUI support.....	159
FortiView (5.6.3).....	159
Support learning reports and FortiAnalyzer (415806).....	159
Added support to FortiView to sort by application risk and browsing time (249666).....	159
FortiView (5.6.1).....	160

FortiView Dashboard Widget (434179).....	160
Interface Categories (srcintfrole, etc) added to log data (434188).....	160
FortiView (5.6).....	160
Added Vulnerability score topology view (303786).....	160
FortiView VPN tunnel map feature (382767).....	160
Updated FortiView CSF topology pages (384188).....	160
Historical FortiView includes FortiAnalyzer (387423).....	160
FortiView menu reorganization (399713).....	161
Data Exchange with FortiAnalyzer (393891).....	161
Google Maps Integration.....	161
FortiView usability and organization updates (306247).....	161
FortiGate VM enhancements for AWS, Azure, Google, SDN connectors and more (5.6.3).....	163
FGT_VM64_AZURE and FGT_VM64_AZUREONDEMAND platforms (356702).....	163
SDN Connector (404907).....	165
FortiGate-VM performance improvements and optimization (416548).....	165
FortiGate-VM Models available for Google Cloud Platform (GCP) (422209).....	166
NPU KVM image for FortiHypervisor (435326).....	166
FGT-VM AWS HA support (445721).....	167
Closed-Network FGT-VM (451872) (455174).....	167
Logging enhancements on FG-VMX (452701).....	167
SDN Connector - AWS (454233).....	167
NSX Connector Upgrade Support (454674) (458180).....	168
GUI fixes for the SDN Connector (458183) (459079) (459081).....	168
FortiGate VM (5.6.0).....	168
FGT-VM VCPUs (308297).....	168
Improvements to License page (382128).....	169
Citrix XenServer tools support for XenServer VMs (387984).....	169
FOS VM supports more interfaces (393068).....	169
NSX security group importing (403975).....	169
Non-vdom VM models FGVM1V/FGVM2V/FGVM4V (405549).....	170
Hardware acceleration (5.6.3).....	171
Bandwidth control for traffic between a managed FortiSwitch and an NP6 processor (437911).....	171
SNMP/CLI monitoring capabilities of NP6 session table and session drift (441532).....	171
Hardware acceleration (5.6.1).....	172
Optionally disable NP6 offloading of traffic passing between 10Gbps and 1Gbps interfaces (392436).....	172
Hardware acceleration (5.6).....	172
Improved visibility of SPU and nTurbo hardware acceleration (389711).....	173
NP4Lite option to disable offloading ICMP traffic in IPsec tunnels (383939).....	173
NP6 IPv4 invalid checksum anomaly checking (387675).....	173
Stripping clear text padding and IPsec session ESP padding (416950).....	174

High Availability (5.6.1).....	175
HA cluster Uptime on HA Status dashboard widget (412089).....	175
FGSP with static (non-dialup) IPsec VPN tunnels and controlling IKE routing advertisement (402295).....	175
VRRP support for synchronizing firewall VIPs and IP Pools (0397824).....	176
High Availability (5.6).....	176
Multicast session failover (293751).....	176
Performance improvement when shutting down or rebooting the primary unit (380279).....	176
VRRP failover process change (390938).....	177
Display cluster up time and history (get system ha status command changes)(394745).....	177
In-band HA management Interface (401378).....	177
Up to four dedicated HA management interfaces supported (378127).....	178
FGSP support for automatic session sync after peer reboot (365851).....	178
NTP over Dedicated HA management interfaces (397889).....	179
IPsec VPN (5.6.3).....	180
IPsec performance improvements for VM (439030).....	180
Improved support for dynamic routing over dynamic IPsec interfaces (435152) (446498) (447569).....	180
BMRK IPsec UDP performance for AES256GCM drops after AES-NI checked in (452164).....	180
IPsec dial-up interface sharing (379973).....	181
IPsec VPN (5.6.1).....	182
Support for Brainpool curves specified in RFC 6954 for IKE (412795).....	182
Removed "exchange-interface-ip" option from "vpn ipsec phase1" (411981).....	182
IKEv2 ancillary RADIUS group authentication (406497).....	182
IPsec mode-cfg can assign IPs from firewall address and sharing IP pools (393331)....	183
Improve interface-based dynamic IPsec up/down time (379937).....	183
Hide psksecret option when peertype is dialup (415480).....	184
New enforce-ipsec option added to L2TP config (423988).....	184
IPsec VPN Wizard improvements (368069).....	184
IPsec manual key support removed from GUI (436041).....	185
Added GUI support for local-gw when configuring custom IPsec tunnels (423786).....	185
Moved the dn-format CLI option from phase1 config to vdom settings (435542).....	185
FGT IKE incorrect NAT detection causes ADVPN hub behind VIP to not generate shortcuts (416786).....	185
IPsec VPN (5.6).....	185
Improvement to stats crypto command output (403995).....	186
Improved certificate key size control commands (397883).....	186
Support bit-based keys in IKE (397712).....	186
IKEv2 asymmetric authentication (393073).....	186
Allow mode-cfg with childless IKEv2 (391567).....	187
IKEv2 Digital Signature Authentication support (389001).....	187

Passive static IPsec VPN (387913).....	187
Phase 2 wizard simplified (387725).....	187
Unique IKE ID enforcement (383296).....	188
FortiView VPN tunnel map feature (382767).....	188
Childless IKEv2 initiation (381650).....	188
Allow peertype dialup for IKEv2 pre-shared key dynamic phase1 (378714).....	189
IPsec default phase1/phase1-interface peertype changed from 'any' to 'peer' (376340).....	189
IPsec GUI bug fixes (374326).....	189
Support for IKEv2 Message Fragmentation (371241).....	189
IPsec monitoring pages now based on phase 1 proposals not phase 2 (304246).....	190
IPv6 (5.6.3).....	191
IPv6 RADIUS support (402437, 439773).....	191
Added support for IPv6 Fortisandbox (424290) (447153).....	191
IPv6 captive portal support (435435).....	191
IPv6 (5.6).....	191
FortiGate can reply to an anycast probe from the interface's unicast address (308872).....	191
Secure Neighbor Discovery (355946).....	191
Add multicast-PMTU to allow FGT to send ICMPv6 Too Big Message (373396).....	193
Logging and Reporting (5.6.3).....	194
Improve FortiAnalyzer storage usage on Log Settings page (409658).....	194
Range change for maximum log age (440633).....	194
New connect and disconnect event logs for FSSO server status change (446263).....	194
Security Fabric audit result logging to FortiGuard (452588).....	194
Config log disk uploadtime units change (400999).....	195
Log field extension policy-name and meta-field (455441).....	195
Rename logtime to eventtime (454445).....	195
Logging and Reporting (5.6.1).....	195
Usability Updates to Reports Page (383684).....	195
Interface Categories (srcintfrole, etc) added to log data (434188).....	196
Individual FAZ log settings for SLBC Cluster Blades (382942/424076).....	196
Logging and Reporting (5.6).....	196
All string values in log messages are enclosed in double quotes (399871).....	196
Client and server certificates included in Application control log messages (406203).....	196
DNS Logging (401757).....	197
Added Policy Comment logging option (387865).....	197
FortiAnalyzer encryption option name change (399191).....	197
Maximum values changes.....	198
Modem (5.6.1).....	198
New modem features (422266).....	198
Static mode for wwan interface removed (440865).....	201
Networking (5.6.3).....	202

Static Route GUI page updates (268344).....	202
Advanced Routing GUI updates (413433, 445075).....	202
VXLAN interfaces can be attached to loopback interfaces (436773).....	202
New option to configure DHCP renew time (440923).....	202
Show/add IPv6 address for CLI "get" under interface and CLI "fnsysctl/sysctl ifconfig interface_id" (442988, 230480).....	203
DHCP Option 82 on Fortigate DHCP relay - RFC3046 (451456).....	203
Networking (5.6.1).....	203
IPv6 Router Advertisement options for DNS enhanced with recursive DNS server option (399406).....	203
Temporarily mask interface failure (435426).....	204
Policy Routes now appear on the routing monitor (411841).....	205
Control how the system behaves during a routing change (408971).....	205
Networking (5.6).....	205
New command to get transceiver signal strength (205138).....	205
New BGP local-AS support (307530).....	206
Interface setting removed from SNMP community (310665).....	206
RPF checks can be removed from the state evaluation process (311005).....	206
BGP graceful-restart-end-on-timer, stale-route, and linkdown-failover options (374140).....	207
FQDNs can be destination addresses in static routes (376200).....	207
Priority for Blackhole routes (378232).....	207
New DDNS refresh interval (383994).....	208
Support IPv6 blackhole routes on GUI (388599).....	208
SSL-VPN can use a WAN link load balancing interface (396236).....	208
DDNS support for noip.com (399126).....	208
IPv6 Router Advertisement options for DNS (399406).....	209
WAN LLB to SD-WAN on GUI (403102).....	209
New RFCs.....	210
Sandbox Integration (5.6.1).....	210
New file extension lists for determining which file types to send to FortiSandbox (379326).....	210
FortiSandbox integration with AntiVirus in quick mode (436380).....	211
Security Fabric (5.6.3).....	211
Security Profiles (5.6.3).....	212
Added multiple ports and port range support in the explicit ftp/web proxy (402775).....	212
Block access to unsupported FortiClient endpoints (457695).....	212
Exempt list fix (381762).....	212
Security Profiles (5.6.1).....	213
FortiGuard WAN IP blacklist service is now online (404859).....	213
Application Control GUI improvements (279956).....	213
Industrial Application Control signatures (434592).....	213

GUI updates to reflect package and license changes for IPS, Application Control and Industrial signatures (397010).....	213
Improved FortiClient monitor display (378288).....	213
FortiSandbox integration with AntiVirus in quick mode (436380).....	214
Pre-configured parental controls for web filtering (399715).....	214
Anti-Spam GUI updates (300423).....	214
Security Profiles (5.6).....	214
New FortiGuard Web Filter categories (407574).....	214
Overall improvement to SSL inspection performance (405224).....	215
FortiClient Endpoint license updates (401721).....	215
FortiClient Vulnerability Exemption Setting (407230).....	216
DNS profile supports safe search (403275).....	216
Application control and Industrial signatures separate from IPS signatures (382053)...	217
Changes to default SSL inspection configuration (380736).....	217
Block Google QUIC protocol in default Application Control configuration (385190).....	218
Botnet database changes (390756).....	218
Security Fabric audit check for endpoint vulnerability and unauthorized FAP and FSW (401462).....	218
Change to CLI commands for configuring custom Internet services (397029).....	218
Enable "sync-session-ttl" in "config ips global" CLI by default (399737).....	219
CASI functionality moved into application control (385183, 372103).....	219
New diagnose command to delete avatars (388634).....	220
Fortinet bar option disabled in profile protocol options when VDOM is in flow-based inspection mode (384953).....	220
SSL/SSH profile certificate handling changes (373835).....	220
Restricting access to YouTube (replacement for the YouTube Education filter feature) (378277).....	221
Enhancements to IPS Signatures page (285543).....	221
DLP sensor GUI changes (307225).....	221
Web Filter profile page GUI updates (309012).....	221
Web Filter Quota traffic can no longer be set to 0 (374380).....	222
Webcache-https and SSL deep inspection profile configuration changes (381101).....	222
FortiGate conserve mode changes (242562, 386503).....	222
New custom IPS and Application Control Signatures list (280954).....	222
Default inspection mode set to flow-based (377392).....	222
Server Load balancing (5.6.1).....	224
Add server load balancing real servers on the Virtual Server GUI page (416709).....	224
Server Load balancing (5.6).....	225
IPv6, 6to4, and 4to6 server load balancing (280073).....	225
Improved Server load balancing GUI pages (404169).....	226
Session-aware Load Balancing (SLBC) (5.6.1).....	227
FortiController-5000 series independent port splitting (42333).....	227
SSL VPN (5.6.3).....	228

Virtual desktop option no longer supported (442044).....	228
Option to disable FortiClient download in web portal (439736).....	228
Upgraded OpenSSL to 1.1.x (412033) (.....)	228
SSL VPN (5.6.1).....	228
Added a button to send Ctrl-Alt-Delete to the remote host for VNC and RDP desktop connections (401807).....	228
Improved SSL VPN Realms page (0392184).....	229
Customizable FortiClient Download URL in SSL VPN Web Portal (437883).....	229
SSL VPN SSO Support for HTML5 RDP (417248).....	229
SSL VPN (5.6).....	229
Remote desktop configuration changes (410648).....	230
SSL VPN supports WAN link load balancing interface (396236).....	230
SSL VPN login timeout to support high latency (394583).....	230
SSL VPN supports Windows 10 OS check (387276).....	231
SSL VPN DNS suffix per portal and number of portals (383754).....	231
New SSL VPN timeout settings (379870).....	231
Personal bookmark improvements (377500).....	232
New controls for SSL VPN client login limits (376983).....	232
Unrated category removed from ssl-exempt (356428).....	232
Clipboard support for SSL VPN remote desktop connections (307465).....	232
System (5.6.3).....	233
System (5.6.1).....	233
Use self-sign as default GUI certificate if BIOS cert is using SHA-1 (403152).....	233
Administrator timeout override per access profile (413543).....	233
New execute script command (423159).....	233
System (5.6).....	234
Remove CLI commands from 1-CPU platforms (405321).....	234
New SNMP trap for bypass events (307329).....	234
Implement SNMP support for NAT Session monitoring which includes new SNMP OIDs (383661).....	234
New extended database version OIDs for AV and IPS (402162).....	234
Administrator password encryption hash upgraded from SHA1 to SHA256 (391576).....	234
Allow multiple FortiManager addresses when configuring central management (388083).....	235
FortiGuard can determine a FortiGate's location from its public IP address (393972).....	235
Deletion of multiple saved configurations supported (308936).....	235
New CLI option to limit script output size (388221).....	235
Enable / disable logging of SSL connection events (375582).....	235
Enabling or disabling static key ciphers (379616).....	236
Enhancements to IPS Signatures page (285543).....	236
Combine multiple commands into a CLI alias (308921).....	236
Traffic shaping (5.6.3).....	237
Support schedule on traffic shaping policy (450337).....	237

VDOMs (5.6.1).....	238
Create a virtual switch that allows multiple VDOMs to use the same physical interface or VLAN (436206).....	238
VDOMs (5.6.0).....	239
Dashboard changes.....	239
Firewall Service Cache improvement.....	239
VoIP/SIP (5.6).....	239
SIP strict-register enabled by default in VoIP Profiles (380830).....	239
SIP diagnose command improvements (376853).....	240
WiFi (5.6.3).....	241
Allow admin with write permission to see plain text WiFi password (249787, 434513, 452834, 458211, 458285).....	241
WiFi Health Monitor page updates (392574, 392585, 404341, 417039, 434141, 440709).....	241
FortiAP LED Schedules (436227).....	241
Sharing Tunnel SSIDs within a single managed AP between VDOMs as a Virtual AP for multi-tenancy (439751).....	241
30D/30E models support two normal-mode FAPs (446122).....	242
MAC Bypass for Captive Portal (448296).....	242
WiFi Health Monitor fixes (449341).....	242
Various bug fixes (452975, 455218, 453161, 405117, 453533, 453535, 184384).....	242
Configure how a FortiWiFi WiFi interface in client mode selects a WiFi band (455305).....	243
WiFi (5.6.1).....	243
Support for various FortiAP models (416177) (435638) (424483).....	243
New Managed AP Groups and Dynamic VLAN Assignment (436267).....	243
GUI support for configuring multiple pre-shared keys for SSID interfaces (406321).....	244
FortiAP Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) Scan (438274).....	244
WiFi client monitor page search enhanced (440709).....	245
WiFi (5.6).....	245
Captive Portal Authentication with FortiAP in Bridge Mode (408915).....	245
802.11kv(r) support (405498, 395037).....	245
External Captive Portal authentication with FortiAP in Bridge Mode (403115, 384872).....	246
Japan DFS support for FAP-421E/423E/S421E/S423E (402287, 401434).....	246
802.3az support on WAVE2 WiFi APs (400558).....	246
CLI command update made in wids-profile (400263).....	246
Channel utilization, FortiPresence support on AP mode, QoS enhancement for voice (399134, 377562).....	247
FAP-U421E and FAP-U423E support (397900).....	247
Minor reorganization of WiFi GUI entries (396497).....	248
Multiple PSK support for WPA personal (393320, 264744).....	248
Table size of qos-profile has VDOM limit (388070).....	249
Add "dhcp-lease-time" setting to local-standalone-nat VAP (384229).....	249
New CLI command to configure LDPC for FortiAP (383864).....	249

New region code/SKU for Indonesia (382926).....	249
FortiAP RMA support added (381936).....	250
Support fixed-length 64-hex digit for WPA-Personal passphrase (381030).....	250
Allow FortiGates to manage cloud-based FortiAPs (380150).....	250
Use IPsec instead of DTLS to protect CAPWAP tunnels (379502).....	250
New option added to support only one IP per one endpoint association (378207).....	250
FAP-222C-K DFS support (377795).....	251
Dynamic VLAN support in standalone mode (377298).....	251
CLI-only features added to GUI (376891).....	251
Managed AP GUI update (375376).....	251
Bonjour gateway support (373659).....	251
FAP421E/423E wave2 support (371374).....	252
WiFi Health Monitor GUI changes (308317).....	252
AP Profile GUI page updates (298266).....	252
1+1 Wireless Controller HA (294656).....	252
Support for duplicate SSID names on tunnel and bridge mode interfaces (278955).....	253
Controlled failover between wireless controllers (249515).....	253

Change Log

Date	Change Description
January 24, 2108	Misc updates and fixes throughout the document.
December 21, 2017	Updated for FortiOS 5.6.3. Also a change made to the "Changes to default SSL inspection configuration (380736)" section of Firewall (5.6) on page 137 .
November 28, 2017	The feature "All string values in log messages are enclosed in double quotes (399871)" has now been add to the section Logging and Reporting (5.6) on page 196 .
November 20, 2017	Fixed an error on the title page.
October 20, 2017	Corrected an error regarding maximum client limits for FortiClient endpoint licenses.
October 11, 2017	Corrected an error in the description of the new feature added on September 19 and added a new feature about certificate verification to the end of the section Firewall (5.6.3) on page 131 .
September 19, 2017	Added a missing new feature about NTP over Dedicated HA management interfaces to High Availability (5.6) on page 176 .
August 24, 2017	Added missing disabling NP6 offloading of traffic passing between 10Gbps and 1Gbps interfaces feature to New hardware acceleration features added to FortiOS 5.6.3. on page 171 . Adding missing IPv6 RADIUS support feature to Authentication (5.6.1) on page 98 .
August 17, 2017	Updated for FortiOS 5.6.2 (no new features, see the Resolved Issues section of the FortiOS 5.6.2 Release Notes for details). Added information about support for RFCs 5746 and 7627 to New RFCs on page 210 .
August 4, 2017	Added new FortiOS 5.6.1 features that were missing from the July 27th version of this document.
July 27, 2017	Updated for FortiOS 5.6.1.
April 27, 2017	Correction to the information about FortiAnalyzer dependency of the Security Fabric in New Security Fabric features on page 26 .
April 12, 2017	Updated information on the FortiExplorer iOS app . Updated NGFW Policy Mode (397035) on page 64 to mention that Flow-based is the default inspection mode for FortiOS 5.6. Corrected the CLI alias section in System (5.6.3) on page 233 .
April 7, 2017	Misc edits and fixes throughout the document.

Date	Change Description
March 31, 2017	Fixes to FortiExplorer for iOS on page 54.
March 30, 2017	First version.

Introduction

This document highlights and describes many of the new features in FortiOS 5.6 as well as FortiOS 5.6.1. Most new feature descriptions include a feature number that references the internal Fortinet ID used to track the feature.

No new features were added to FortiOS 5.6.2. This is a bug fix release. See the Resolved Issues section of the FortiOS 5.6.2 Release Notes for details.

How this guide is organized

The following sections highlight some of the higher profile new FortiOS 5.6 features.

- [FortiGate VM enhancements for AWS, Azure, Google, SDN connectors and more \(5.6.3\) on page 163](#)
- [New Dashboard Features](#)
- [New Security Fabric features](#)
- [Security Fabric Audit and Fabric Score](#)
- [FortiExplorer for iOS](#)
- [NGFW Policy Mode \(397035\)](#)
- [Transparent web proxy \(386474\)](#)
- [New FortiView Endpoint Vulnerability Scanner chart \(378647\)](#)
- [FortiClient Profile changes \(386267, 375049\)](#)
- [Application Control is a free service](#)
- [Real time logging to FortiAnalyzer and FortiCloud](#)
- [FortiGate Logs can be sent to syslog servers in Common Event Format \(CEF\) \(300128\)](#)
- [Controlled failover between wireless controllers](#)
- [Multiple PSK for WPA Personal \(393320\)](#)
- [VXLAN support \(289354\)](#)
- [New PPPoE features](#)
- [Adding Internet services to firewall policies \(389951\)](#)
- [Combining source and destination NAT in the same policy \(388718\)](#)
- [NP6 Host Protection Engine \(HPE\) adds protection for DDoS attacks \(363398\)](#)

All of the other new features in FortiOS 5.6 are organized alphabetically by subject:

- [Getting Started \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [Getting Started \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [Getting Started \(5.6\)](#)
- [Authentication \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [Authentication \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [Authentication \(5.6\)](#)
- [FortiOS Carrier \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [FortiOS Carrier \(5.6.1\)](#)

- [Device identification \(5.6\)](#)
- [Device identification \(5.6\)](#)
- [Diagnose command changes \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [Diagnose command changes \(5.6\)](#)
- [Explicit web proxy \(5.6\)](#)
- [Firewall \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [Firewall \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [Firewall \(5.6\)](#)
- [Managed FortiSwitch OS 3.6.0 \(FortiOS 5.6.3\)](#)
- [Managed FortiSwitch OS 3.6.0 \(FortiOS 5.6.1\)](#)
- [Managed FortiSwitch OS 3.6.0 \(FortiOS 5.6\)](#)
- [FortiView \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [FortiView \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [FortiView \(5.6\)](#)
- [FortiGate VM enhancements for AWS, Azure, Google, SDN connectors and more \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [FortiGate VM \(5.6.0\)](#)
- [Hardware acceleration \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [Hardware acceleration \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [Hardware acceleration \(5.6\)](#)
- [High Availability \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [High Availability \(5.6\)](#)
- [IPsec VPN \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [IPsec VPN \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [IPsec VPN \(5.6\)](#)
- [IPv6 \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [IPv6 \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [Logging and Reporting \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [Logging and Reporting \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [Logging and Reporting \(5.6\)](#)
- [Modem \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [Networking \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [Networking \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [Networking \(5.6\)](#)
- [New RFCs](#)
- [Sandbox Integration \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [Security Profiles \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [Security Profiles \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [Security Profiles \(5.6\)](#)
- [Server Load balancing \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [Session-aware Load Balancing \(SLBC\) \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [SSL VPN \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [SSL VPN \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [SSL VPN \(5.6\)](#)

- [System \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [System \(5.6\)](#)
- [VDOMs \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [VDOMs \(5.6.0\)](#)
- [VoIP/SIP \(5.6\)](#)
- [WiFi \(5.6.3\)](#)
- [WiFi \(5.6.1\)](#)
- [WiFi \(5.6\)](#)

New Security Fabric features

In FortiOS 5.6, the Security Fabric (previously known as the Cooperative Security Fabric) has been expanded in several ways to add more functionality and visibility.

One of the most important functional changes is that FortiAnalyzer is now a required part of the Security Fabric configuration. Also, two important new features, Security Fabric Audit and Fabric Score, have been added to provide a method to continually monitor and improve the Security Fabric configuration.

Many changes have been made through FortiView to improve the visibility of the Security Fabric. More information is now displayed and you can access downstream FortiGates directly from the root FortiGate's FortiView display.

Other smaller improvements have been made throughout the Security Fabric, with a focus on improving communication between devices.

In FortiOS 5.6.1, the new updated GUI design consolidates the Security Fabric features together under a new menu and has many new topological changes to provide greater visibility into the connectivity of your networked devices. This includes adding more Fortinet products to the topology and widgets. Other topology improvements include enhanced IPsec VPN detection (which now includes detection of downstream FortiGates) and support for SD-WAN. Smaller changes have also been made to add more information to device tooltip alerts in the Physical and Logical Topology views.

Setting up the Security Fabric in FortiOS 5.6

See the following FortiGate Cookbook recipes to get started in setting up the Security Fabric in FortiOS 5.6:

- [Installing a FortiGate in NAT/Route mode](#)
- [Security Fabric installation](#)

Security Fabric between remote networks by enabling FortiTelemetry for IPsec VPN interfaces

You can now enable FortiTelemetry for IPsec VPN interfaces. The Security Fabric can now detect the downstream FortiGate through the IPsec VPN interface. This allows you to send FortiTelemetry communication over a Gateway-to-Gateway IPsec VPN tunnel between two remote networks. One of the networks would contain the root FortiGate and the network at the other end of the IPsec VPN tunnel can connect to the root FortiGate's Security Fabric.

In the GUI, to enable FortiTelemetry

1. Go to **Network > Interfaces** and edit your IPsec VPN interface.
2. Under Administrative Access enable FortiTelemetry.

Edit Interface

Interface Name

VPN-to-Branch

Alias

Type

Tunnel Interface

Interface

port9

Role ⓘ

Undefined

Address

Addressing mode

Manual

IP

10.1.1.2

Network Mask

255.255.255.255

Remote IP

10.1.1.1

IPv6 Addressing mode

Manual

DHCP

IPv6 Address/Prefix

::/0

Administrative Access

IPv4

☐ HTTPS

☐ HTTP ⓘ

☐ PING

☐ FMG-Access

☐ CAPWAP

☐ SSH

☐ SNMP

☐ FTM

☐ RADIUS Accounting

☒ FortiTelemetry

Your IPsec VPN interface will automatically be added to the FortiTelemetry enabled interface list under **Security Fabric > Settings**.

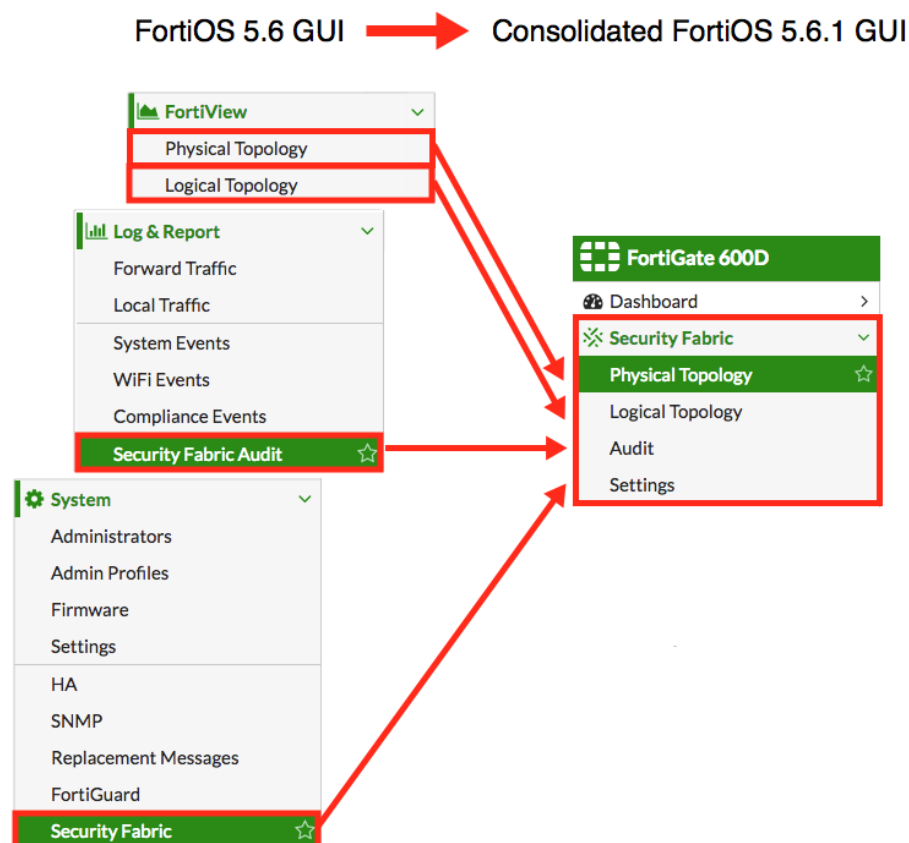


In the CLI, enter the following commands:

```
config system interface
  edit <vpn_name>
    set fortiheartbeat enable
  end
```

Re-designed Security Fabric setup

A new updated GUI menu consolidates the Security Fabric features in one location. This includes **Physical Topology**, **Logical Topology**, **Audit**, and **Settings**. For more details, see the illustration below:



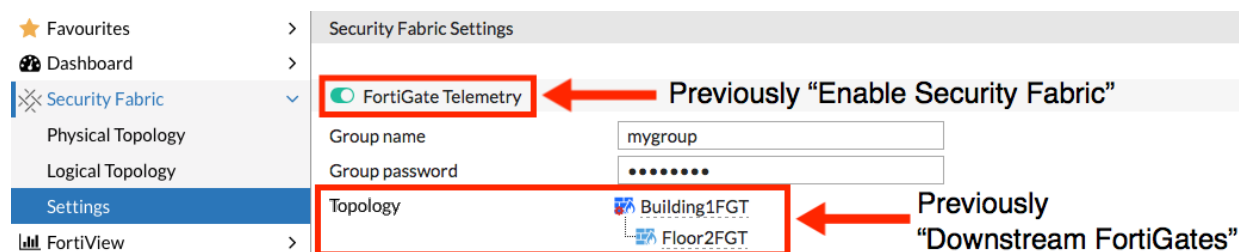
Improved Security Fabric Settings page

The Security Fabric **Settings** page has been updated to act as a centralized location for you to enable connectivity to other Fortinet products. Navigate to **Security Fabric > Settings**.

Changes to the **Settings** page include the following:

- The previous **Enable Security Fabric** option has been replaced with an option to enable **FortiGate Telemetry**.
- The previous **Downstream FortiGates** option has been replaced with **Topology** to show multiple devices.

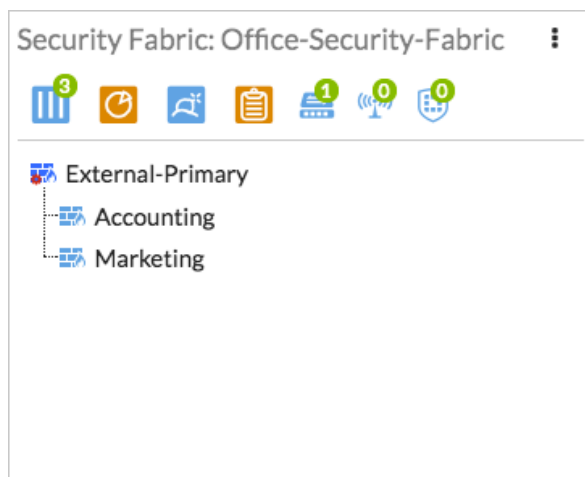
See the screen shot below:



Security Fabric dashboard widgets

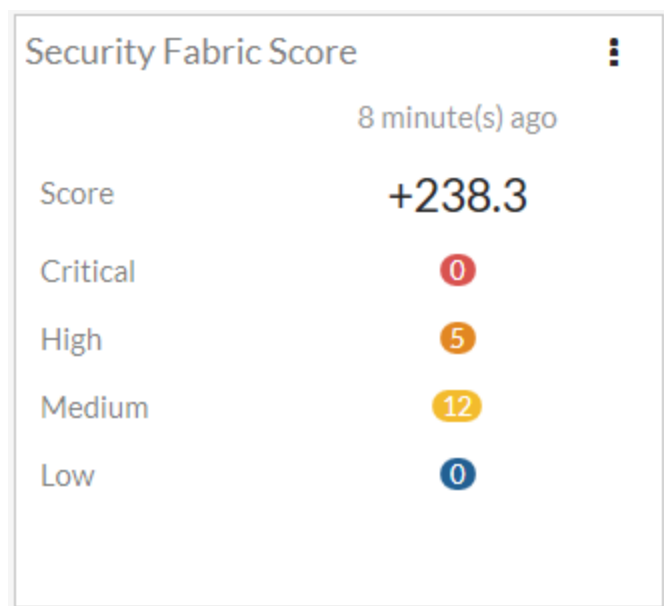
New dashboard widgets for the Security Fabric put information about the status of the Security Fabric at your fingertips when you first log into your FortiGate.

The FortiGate dashboard widget has been updated to include the following Fortinet products: FortiGate (core), FortiAnalyzer (core), FortiSwitch, FortiClient, FortiSandbox, and FortiManager. See the screen shot below:



You can hover over the icons along the top of the Security Fabric widget to get a quick view of the status of the Security Fabric. Available information includes the FortiTelemetry status and the status of various components of in the Security Fabric.

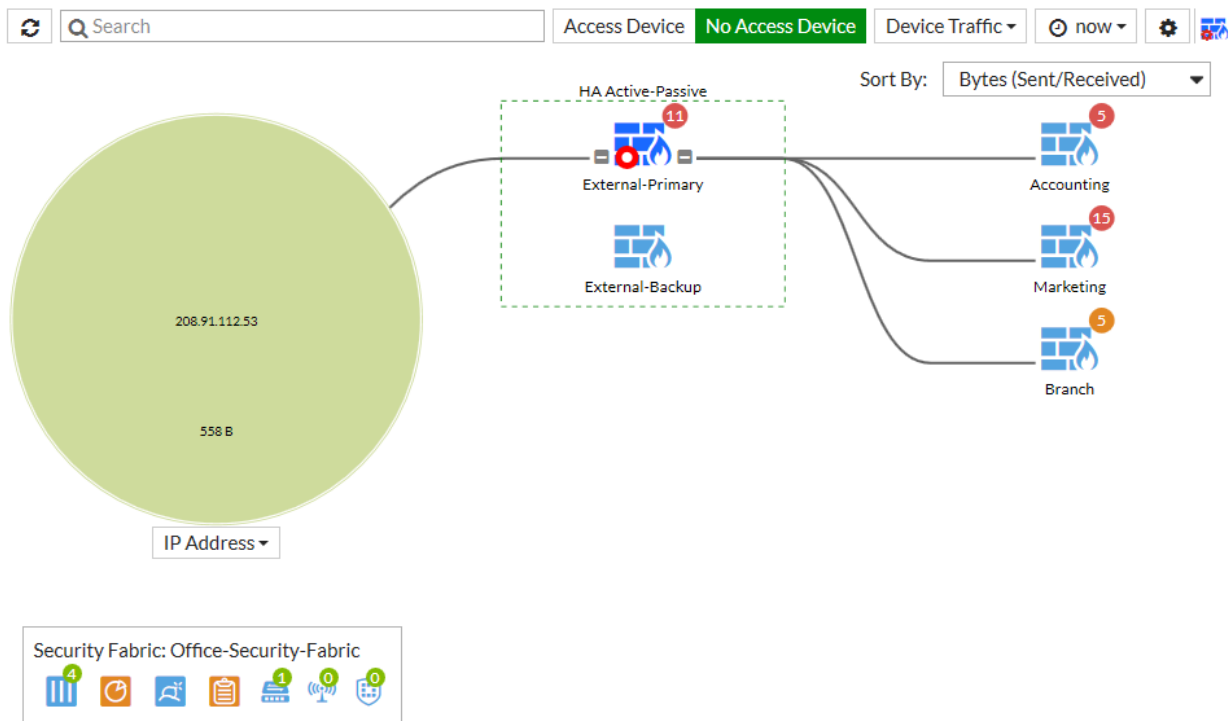
The Security Fabric Score widget shows the Security Fabric Audit score for the Security Fabric and allows you to apply recommended changes right from the dashboard.



Physical and Logical FortiView improvements

The FortiView Physical and Logical Topology pages now display the following improvements:

- Shows both FortiGates in an HA configuration
- Shows FortiAPs
- Lists FortiAnalyzer and FortiSandbox as components of the Security Fabric
- Highlights the current FortiGate
- Displays Link Usage in different colors
- Ranks Endpoints by FortiClient Vulnerability Score and by Threat Score (see below, for more information)
- Displays user avatars
- Recognizes servers as a device type
- Introduces a search bar to help locate specific devices in the Security Fabric



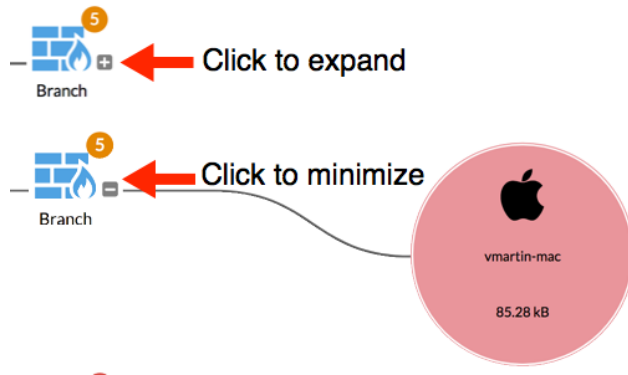
Updated Physical and Logical Topology legend

On the **Physical Topology** and **Logical Topology** pages, the Security Fabric legend has been updated. See the screenshot below:



New option to minimize the Topology

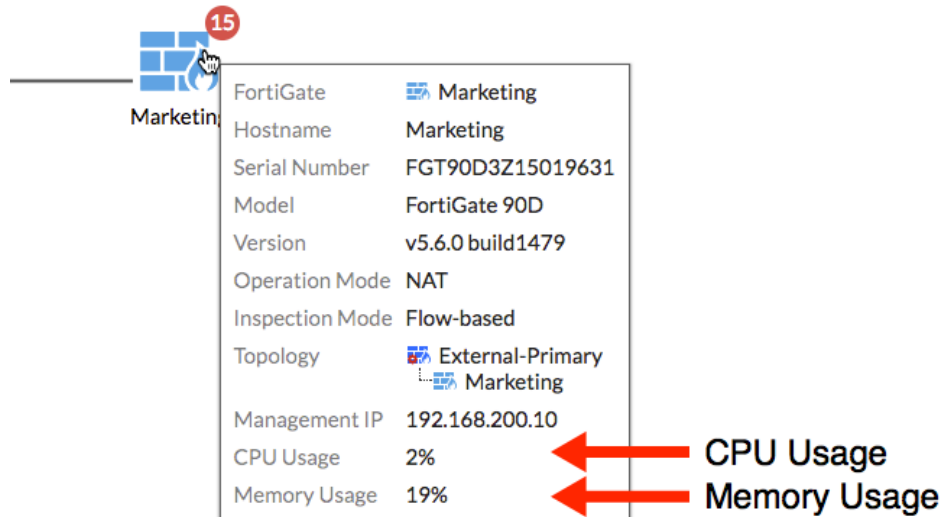
This new feature allows you to minimize portions of the Physical and Logical Topology. This makes it easy to view your entire topology, or minimize portions to focus in on a specific area. See the screenshot below:



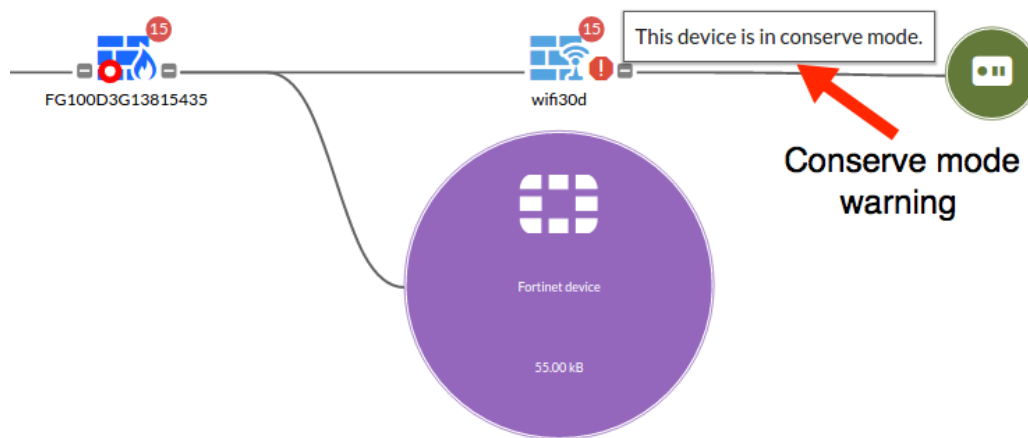
Security Fabric Topology shows new resource information alerts

The enhanced Security Fabric topology now shows CPU Usage and Memory Usage alerts in the device information tooltip. It also displays a warning if the FortiGate is in conserve mode. Note that the CPU usage, memory usage and conserve mode data are drawn from the data that was last loaded from the FortiGate, not real-time data.

You can see the new CPU Usage and Memory Usage fields shown in the tooltip below:



The Conserve mode warning is shown below:



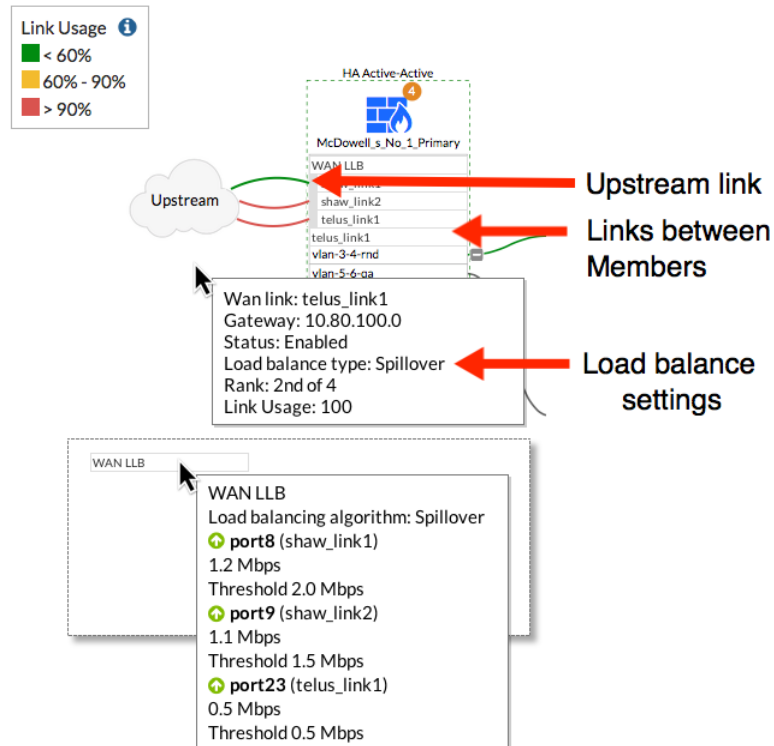
SD-WAN information added to Security Fabric topology

The Security Fabric topology now includes SD-WAN. Enhancements include greater visibility into where the data comes from and goes to, link saturation indicators, and detailed tooltip explanations.

The following SD-WAN information has been integrated into the Security Fabric topology:

- The tooltip for the SD-WAN interface now includes load balancing settings.
- In the Security Fabric Logical Topology, SD-WAN and its interface members will appear above all interfaces.
- If connected to an upstream FortiGate, one link between the exact SD-WAN member and the upstream FortiGate will appear.
- If connected to a destination bubble, links between each enabled member and the destination bubble appear.
- Interface bandwidth and link utilization for other interfaces (WAN role interface) have been temporarily removed and will be added back in later.
- Fixes have been made to show vulnerabilities for multiple MAC addresses (402495) and to show the FortiSwitch serial and port (389158).

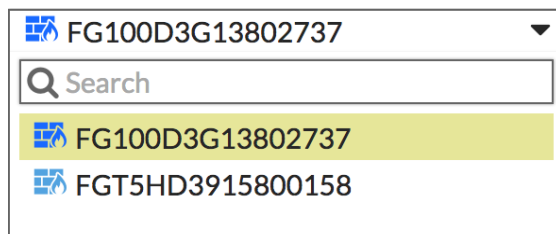
For more details see the screenshot below:



SD-WAN Monitor Support added to Security Fabric (417210)

The Security Fabric now retrieves monitor information from all members of the Security Fabric and displays it in the GUI of the root FortiGate. Support was added for the Routing Monitor, DHCP Monitor and User Quarantine Monitor.

You can use the new drop down menu shown below to select the Security Fabric members:



FortiCache support for the Security Fabric (435830)

FortiGates in the Security Fabric can now use FortiCache as a remote cache service. Previously, FortiCache was supported via WCCP re-direct only, but now FortiGates can use it as a local cache rather than redirecting via WCCP.

In the GUI, follow the steps below:

1. Go to **Security Fabric > Settings** and enable **HTTP Service**.

2. Set **Device Type** to **FortiCache** and add the **IP addresses** of the FortiCache devices.
3. You can also select **Authentication** and add a password if required. See the screenshot below:

HTTP Service ☒

Device type: FortiCache FortiWeb

FortiCache IPs: 10.10.10.10

Authentication ☒

Password:

In the CLI, enter the following commands:

```
config wanopt forticache-service
  set status enable
  set local-cache-id <local-cache-id>
  set remote-forticache-id <remote-forticache-id>
  set remote-forticache-ip <remote-forticache-ip>
end
```

- `status` - Enable/disable using FortiCache as web-cache storage
- `disable` - Use local disks as web-cache storage
- `enable` - Use a remote FortiCache as web-cache storage
- `local-cache-id` - The cache ID that this device uses to connect to the remote FortiCache
- `remote-forticache-id` - The ID of the FortiCache that the device connects to
- `remote-forticache-ip` - The IP address of the FortiCache the device connects to

Enhanced Security Fabric audit tests for FortiGuard licenses (409156)

The Security Fabric audit now has separate audit tests for FortiGuard licenses based on whether the FortiGuard license is valid, expired, never been activated, or temporarily unavailable. Previously, the audit test performed one batch test on all FortiGuard licenses, regardless of the status of the licenses. Recommendations for individual licenses are also provided in the GUI tooltips.

You can see the new breakdown of pass or fail actions shown below:

- License valid = pass
- License expired = fail
- License never activated = fail
- License is unavailable (connection issue with FortiGuard) = pass

If a required **Feature Visibility** is disabled, the audit test for it will not show vulnerabilities. The audit will show a score of zero (or a pass). Go to **System > Feature Visibility** (previously the Feature Select menu) to make any changes.

In the GUI, follow the steps below to check the status of your FortiGuard licenses:

1. Go to **Security Fabric > Audit** to check the status of your FortiGuard licenses.
2. Follow the steps in the Security Fabric Audit wizard.
3. Expand **Firmware & Subscriptions**, and look at the **FortiGuard License Subscriptions** section to verify whether any recommended action is required. See the example below:

Issue	FortiGate	Result	Recommendation
<div> Firmware & Subscriptions 5 </div>			
FortiCare Support FortiGate should be registered with FortiCare and have valid support coverage.	External-Primary	-50	Renew the following support coverage services that have expired: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hardware Version (2017/05/08) • Firmware (2017/05/08) • Enhanced Support (2017/05/08) • Comprehensive Support (2017/05/08)
FortiGuard License Subscriptions All registered FortiGuard license subscriptions should be valid.	External-Primary	-50	Renew the following expired licenses: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AntiVirus (2017/05/08) • IPS (2017/05/08)

FortiClient Vulnerability Score

Endpoints in the Security Fabric topology are now ranked by their FortiClient Vulnerability Score. This score is calculated by the severity of vulnerabilities found on the endpoint:

- critical vulnerability = 100 points
- high vulnerability = 50 points
- medium vulnerability = 5 points
- low vulnerability = 2 points
- info vulnerability = 1 point

FortiView Consolidation

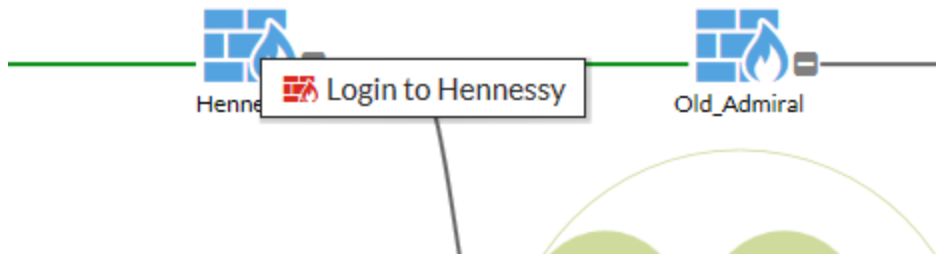
Information about the Security Fabric can now be seen throughout the FortiView dashboards on the upstream FortiGate, when the real-time view is used.

- You can right-click on an entry and select View Aggregated Details to see more information.
- The upstream FortiGate filters information to avoid counting traffic from the same hosts multiple times on each hop.

The upstream FortiGate also now has the option to end downstream FortiGate sessions or quarantine endpoints that connect to downstream FortiGates.

Remote login to downstream FortiGates

You can now log into downstream FortiGates from the upstream FortiGate, by right-clicking on the downstream FortiGate when viewing the Security Fabric's topology using FortiView.



Logging Consolidation and Improvements

Several changes have been made to improve logging for a Security Fabric.

Sending all logs to a single FortiAnalyzer

By default, all FortiGates in the Security Fabric now send logs to a single FortiAnalyzer. The connection to the FortiAnalyzer is configured on the upstream FortiGate, then the settings are pushed to all other FortiGates.

In FortiOS 5.6, a FortiAnalyzer is required for the root FortiGate in the Security Fabric; however, downstream devices can be configured to use other logging methods through the CLI:

```
config system csf
  set logging-mode local
end
```

Data Exchange with FortiAnalyzer

The following information about the Security Fabric configuration is now sent to the FortiAnalyzer:

- Topology info
- Interface roles
- LAT / LNG info
- Device asset tags

☒ Security Fabric

Group name

Group password

Connect to upstream FortiGate ☐

☒ FortiAnalyzer logging

IP Address [Test Connectivity](#) [View Permissions](#)

Storage Usage

0%

 59.00 MB / 23.13 GB

Upload Option Real Time Every Minute Every 5 Minutes

Encrypt Log Transmission [i](#) ☒

Retrieving Monitor Information

Monitors on the upstream FortiGate, such as the VPN Monitor, Route Monitor, and User Quarantine, can now view the information from downstream devices. You can use the button in the top right corner of the screen to change the FortiGate information that is displayed.

Log Settings

Log statistics for each FortiGate in the Security Fabric are now shown when you go to **Log & Report > Log Settings**.

Device Tree

The entire Security Fabric tree is now updated upward, and each node has an updated state of the whole subtree. The content is saved in the local file and upon request from the GUI or a diagnose command (dia sys csf downstream) it can be retrieved.

Security Fabric Audit and Fabric Score

This chapter contains information about the Security Fabric Audit and Fabric Score, which together provide a method to continually monitor and improve your Security Fabric's configuration.

What is the Security Fabric Audit?

The Security Fabric Audit is a feature on your FortiGate that allows you to analyze your Security Fabric deployment to identify potential vulnerabilities and highlight best practices that could be used to improve your network's overall security and performance.

Why should you run a Security Fabric Audit?

Using the Security Fabric Audit helps you to tune your network's configuration, deploy new hardware and/or software, and gain more visibility and control of your network. Also, by checking your Security Fabric Score, which is determined based on how many checks your network passes/fails during the Audit, you can have confidence that your network is getting more secure over time.

Running a Security Fabric Audit



The Security Fabric Audit must be run on the root FortiGate in the Security Fabric.

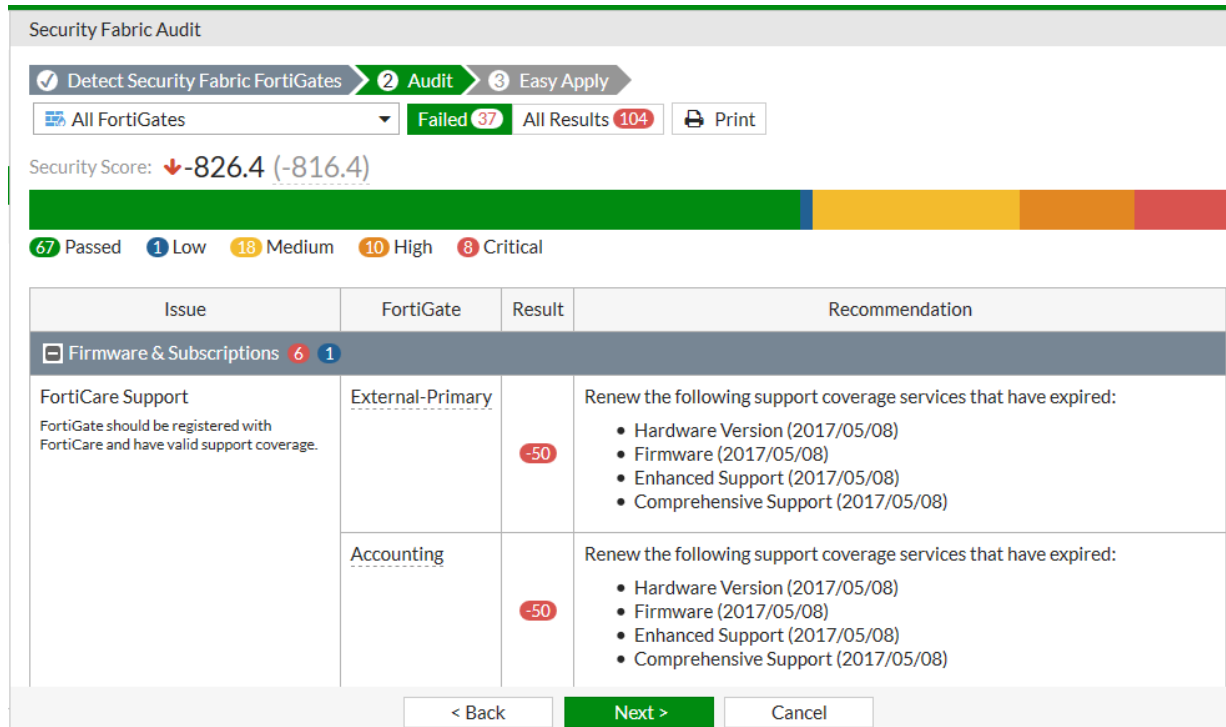
The Security Fabric Audit can be found by going to **Security Fabric > Audit**. In the first step, all detected FortiGates are shown.

1 Detect Security Fabric FortiGates 2 Audit 3 Easy Apply

i 4 FortiGate(s) detected in your security fabric.

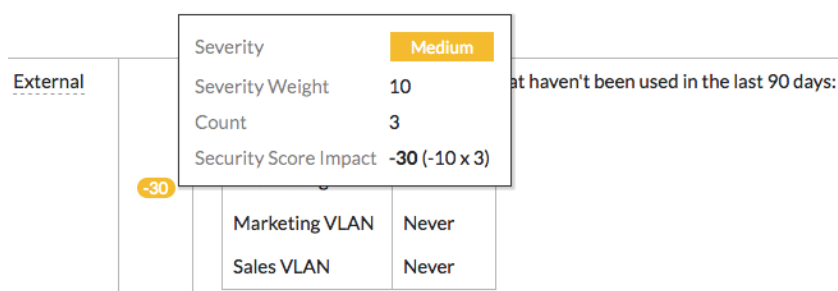
FortiGate	Model	Version
External	FortiGate 600D	v5.6.0 build1435
Sales	FortiGate 51E	v5.6.0 build1435
Accounting	FortiGate 140D	v5.6.0 build1435
Marketing	FortiGate 90D	v5.6.0 build1435

In the second step, the audit is performed and a list of recommendations are shown. Two views are available: **Failed** or **All Results**. These views can be further segmented so that you view results from all FortiGates or just a specific unit.



In each view, a chart appears showing the results of individual checks. The following information is shown: the name and a description of the check, which FortiGate the check occurred on, the checks result on your overall security score, and any necessary recommendations.

If you hover the mouse over the **Result** for a check, you can get a breakdown on how this score was determined. For more information about this, see ["Security Fabric Score" on page 44](#).



















In Step Three of the Audit, **Easy Apply** recommendations are displayed and can be applied. By using **Easy Apply**, you can change the configuration of any FortiGate in the fabric.

For other recommendations, further action is required if you wish to follow the recommendation.

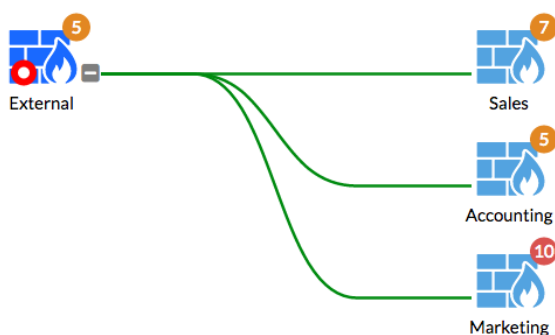
Detect Security Fabric FortiGates
Audit
Easy Apply

Backup configuration before applying any recommendations ☒

All FortiGates

Issue	FortiGate	Result	Recommendation
Internal Segmentation Firewall (ISFW)			
Device Discovery Interfaces which are classified as "LAN" or "DMZ" should have device detection enabled.	Sales	 30	Enable device detection on the following interfaces:  lan
	Marketing	 30	Enable device detection on the following interfaces:  internal
Endpoint Compliance			
Endpoint Registration Interfaces which are classified as "LAN" should have FortiTelemetry enabled.	Marketing	 30	Enable FortiTelemetry on the following interfaces:  internal
Security Best Practices			
Detect Botnet Connections Interfaces which are classified as "WAN" should block or monitor outgoing connections to botnet sites.	Sales	 30	Block outgoing connections to botnet sites on the following interfaces:  wan1
	Accounting	 30	Block outgoing connections to botnet sites on the following interfaces:  wan1
	Marketing	 30	Block outgoing connections to botnet sites on the following interfaces:  wan1
Admin Password Policy A password policy should be set up for system administrators.	External	 10	Enable a simple password policy for system administrators.
	Sales	 10	Enable a simple password policy for system administrators.
	Accounting	 10	Enable a simple password policy for system administrators.
	Marketing	 10	Enable a simple password policy for system administrators.

You can also view Audit recommendations for specific devices using the FortiView Topology consoles. If a recommendation is available for a device, a circle containing a number appears. The number shows how many recommendations are available, while the color of the circle shows the severity of the highest check that failed (red is critical, orange is high, yellow is medium, and blue is low).



Logging for the Security Fabric Audit

An event filter subtype is available for the Security Audit. Every time an audit is run, event logs are created on the root FortiGate that summarize the results of the audit, as well as details into the individual tests.

Syntax

```

config log eventfilter
    set security-audit {enable | disable} (enabled by default)
end

```

Security Fabric Audit Checks

The Security Fabric Audit performs a variety of checks when analyzing your network. All checks are based on your current network configuration, using realtime monitoring. The Audit runs these checks across all FortiGate in the Security Fabric.

Firmware & Subscriptions

Goal	Severity	Check	Recommendation	Easy Apply?
Compatible Firmware	Critical	All FortiGate in the Security Fabric should run the same firmware version.	Run same version as root.	No
FortiCare Support	Critical	FortiGate should be registered with FortiCare.	Register with FortiCare.	No
FortiGuard License Subscriptions	High	All registered FortiGuard license subscriptions should be valid.	Renew subscriptions.	No
FortiAP Firmware Versions	Low	All FortiAPs should be running the latest firmware.	Upgrade FortiAP to recommended version.	No
FortiSwitch Firmware Versions	Low	All FortiSwitches should be running the latest firmware.	Update all FortiSwitches to use the latest firmware.	No

Internal Segmentation Firewall (ISFW)

Goal	Severity	Check	Recommendation	Easy Apply?
Interface Classification	High	All interfaces should be classified as either "LAN", "WAN", or "DMZ".	Configure the interface role.	Yes
Device Discovery	High	Interfaces which are classified as "LAN" or "DMZ" should have device detection enabled.	Enable device detection.	Yes

Goal	Severity	Check	Recommendation	Easy Apply?
Third Party Router & NAT Devices	Medium	No third party router or NAT devices should be detected in the network.	Replace the device with a FortiGate.	No
VLAN Management	Medium	Non-FortiLink interfaces should not have multiple VLANs configured on them.	Use FortiSwitch and FortiLink.	No
Centralized Logging & Reporting	High	Logging and reporting should be done in a centralized place throughout the Security Fabric.	Install FortiAnalyzer for logging & reporting.	No
LAN Segment	Medium	Servers should be placed behind interfaces classified as "DMZ".	All servers should be moved to interfaces with role "DMZ".	No
Unused Policies	Medium	All IPv4 policies should be used.	Review all IPv4 policies that haven't been used in the last 90 days.	No
Advanced Threat Protection	High	Suspicious files should be submitted to FortiSandbox or FortiSandbox Cloud for inspection.	Configure AntiVirus profiles to send files to FortiSandbox or FortiSandbox Cloud for inspection.	No
Unauthorized FortiAPs	Medium	All discovered FortiAPs should be authorized or disabled.	Authorize or disable unauthorized FortiAPs.	Yes
Unauthorized FortiSwitches	Medium	All discovered FortiSwitches should be authorized or disabled.	Authorize or disable unauthorized FortiSwitches.	Yes

Endpoint Compliance

Goal	Severity	Check	Recommendation	Easy Apply?
Endpoint Registration	High	Interfaces which are classified as "LAN" should have FortiTelemetry enabled.	Enable FortiTelemetry on "LAN" interfaces.	Yes
FortiClient Protected	Medium	All supported devices should be registered via FortiClient.	Register all devices via FortiClient.	No
FortiClient Compliance	Medium	All registered FortiClient devices should be compliant with FortiClient profile.	Investigate non-compliant reason(s) for FortiClient endpoints.	No

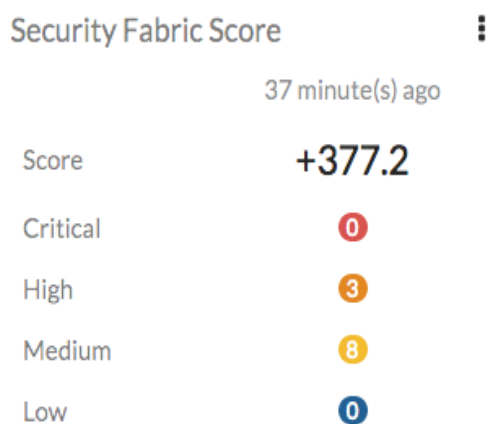
Goal	Severity	Check	Recommendation	Easy Apply?
FortiClient Vulnerabilities	Critical	All registered FortiClient devices should have no critical vulnerabilities.	Have FortiClient fix the detected critical vulnerabilities.	No

Security Best Practices

Goal	Severity	Check	Recommendation	Easy Apply?
Detect Botnet Connections	High	Interfaces which are classified as "WAN" should block or monitor outgoing connections to botnet sites	Enable botnet detection on "WAN" interfaces.	Yes
Unsecure Protocol - HTTP	High	Interfaces which are classified as "WAN" should not allow HTTP administrative access.	Enable HTTPS redirection globally.	Yes
Unsecure Protocol - Telnet	High	Interfaces which are classified as "WAN" should not allow Telnet administrative access.	Disable Telnet.	Yes
Valid HTTPS Certificate - Administrative GUI	Medium	The administrative GUI should not be using a default built-in certificate.	Acquire a certificate for your domain, upload it, and configure the administrative GUI to use it.	No
Valid HTTPS Certificate - SSL VPN	Medium	SSL VPN should not be using a default built-in certificate.	Acquire a certificate for your domain, upload it, and configure SSL VPN to use it.	No
Explicit Interface Policies	Low	Policies that allow traffic should not be using the "any" interface.	Change the policy to use a specific interface.	No
Admin Password Policy	Medium	A password policy should be setup for system administrators.	Enable a simple password policy for system administrators.	Yes

Security Fabric Score

The **Security Fabric Score** widget has been added to the FortiGate Dashboard to give visibility into auditing trends. This widget uses information from the Security Fabric Audit to determine your score. Score can be positive or negative, with a higher score representing a more secure network.



Score is based on the number of checks failed and the severity of these checks. The weight for each severity level is as follows:

- Critical: 50 points
- High: 25 points
- Medium: 10 points
- Low: 5 points

You get points for passing a test only when it passes for all FortiGates in your fabric. If this occurs, the score is calculated using this formula:

$$+Severity\ Weight \times Secure\ FortiGate\ Multiplier$$

The Severity Weight is calculated as Severity divided by the number of FortiGates in the Fabric. The Secure FortiGate Multiplier is determined using logarithms and the number of FortiGates in the fabric. For example, if you have four FortiGates in your fabric that all pass the Compatible Firmware check, your score for each individual FortiGate is:

$$(50/4) \times 1.292 = 16.2\ points$$

If a test fails on any FortiGate in your Fabric, all other FortiGates that passed the check award 0 points. For the FortiGate the test failed on, the score is calculated using this formula:

$$-Severity\ Weight \times Count$$

Count is the number of times the check failed during the audit. For example, if two critical FortiClient vulnerabilities are discovered during the Audit, your score for that check is:

$$-50 \times 2 = -100\ points$$

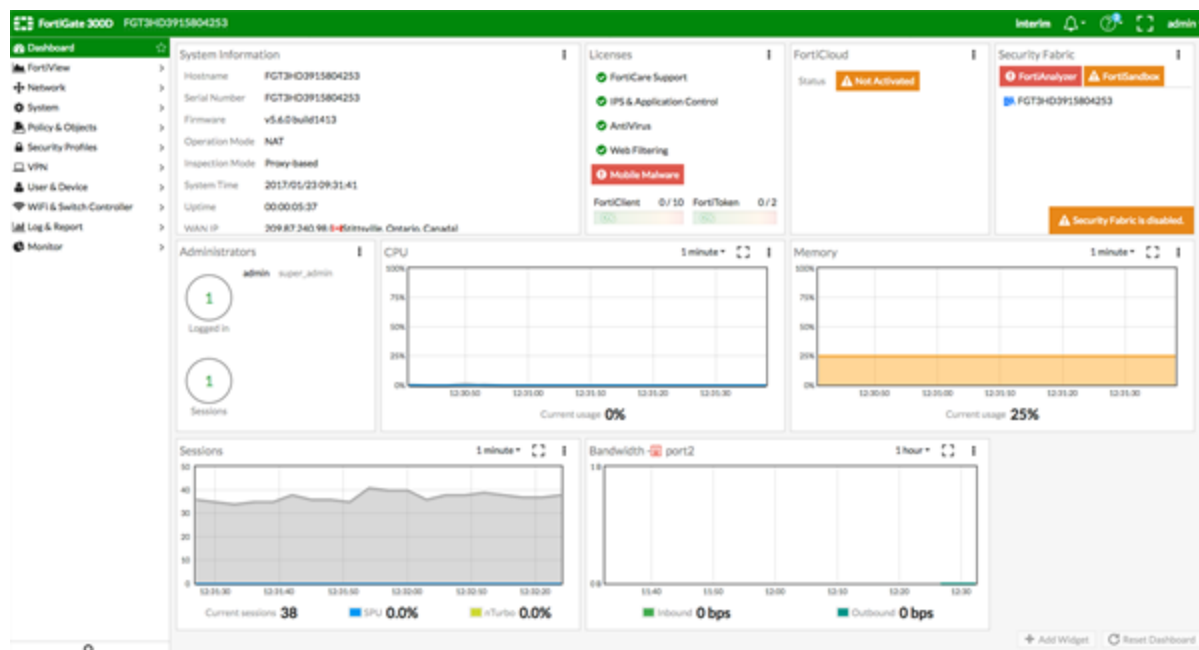
For checks that do not apply, your score does not change. For example, if you have no FortiAPs in the fabric, you will receive no points for the FortiAP Firmware Versions check.

New Dashboard Features

The FortiOS 5.6 **Dashboard** has a new layout with a Network Operations Center (NOC) view with a focus on alerts. Widgets are interactive; by clicking or hovering over most widgets, the user can get additional information or follow links to other pages.

Enhancements to the GUI dashboard and its widgets are:

- Multiple dashboard support.
- VDOM and global dashboards.
- Updated resize control for widgets.
- Notifications moved to the top header bar (moved existing dashboard notifications to the header and added additional ones).
- Reorganization of **Add Widget** dialog.
- New **Host Scan Summary** widget.
- New **Vulnerabilities Summary** widget that displays endpoint vulnerability information much like the FortiClient Enterprise Management Server (EMS) summary.
- Multiple bug fixes.



Features that were only visible through old dashboard widgets have been placed elsewhere in the GUI:

- Restore configuration.
- Configuration revisions.
- Firmware management.
- Enabling / disabling VDOMs.
- Changing inspection mode.

- Changing operation mode.
- Shutdown / restart device.
- Changing hostname.
- Changing system time.

The following **widgets are displayed by default**:

- [System Information](#)
- [Licenses](#)
- [FortiCloud](#)
- [Security Fabric](#)
- [Administrators](#)
- [CPU](#)
- [Memory](#)
- [Sessions](#)
- [Bandwidth](#)
- [Virtual Machine](#) (on VMs and new to FortiOS 5.6.1)

The following **optional** widgets are available:

- Interface Bandwidth
- Disk Usage
- Security Fabric Risk
- Advanced Threat Protection Statistics
- Log Rate
- Session Rate
- Sensor Information
- HA Status
- Host Scan Summary
- Vulnerabilities Summary
- FortiView (new to FortiOS 5.6.1)

The following widgets have been **removed**:

- CLI Console
- Unit Operation
- Alert Message Console

System Information

System Information

Hostname	FG100D3G15818864
Serial Number	FG100D3G15818864
Firmware	v5.6.0 build1435
Mode	NAT (Proxy-based)
System Time	2017/03/22 14:05:04
Uptime	00:00:31:34
WAN IP	209.87.240.98 (🇨🇦 Kanata, Ontario, Canada)

Configure settings in System > Settings

Update firmware in System > Firmware

Only appears when you click on the widget. Click on the System page you want to go to.

FortiGuard WAN IP blacklist service is now online

The FortiGuard WAN IP blacklist service was not online in FortiOS 5.6.0. In FortiOS 5.6.1, a notification appears on the **Dashboard** when WAN IP is blacklisted. Clicking on the notification (bell icon) brings up the blacklist details.

interim [bell icon] [refresh icon] [refresh icon] [refresh icon] admin

WAN IP Blacklisted

FortiCare is not registered.

WAN IP "172.16.113.239" is blacklisted.

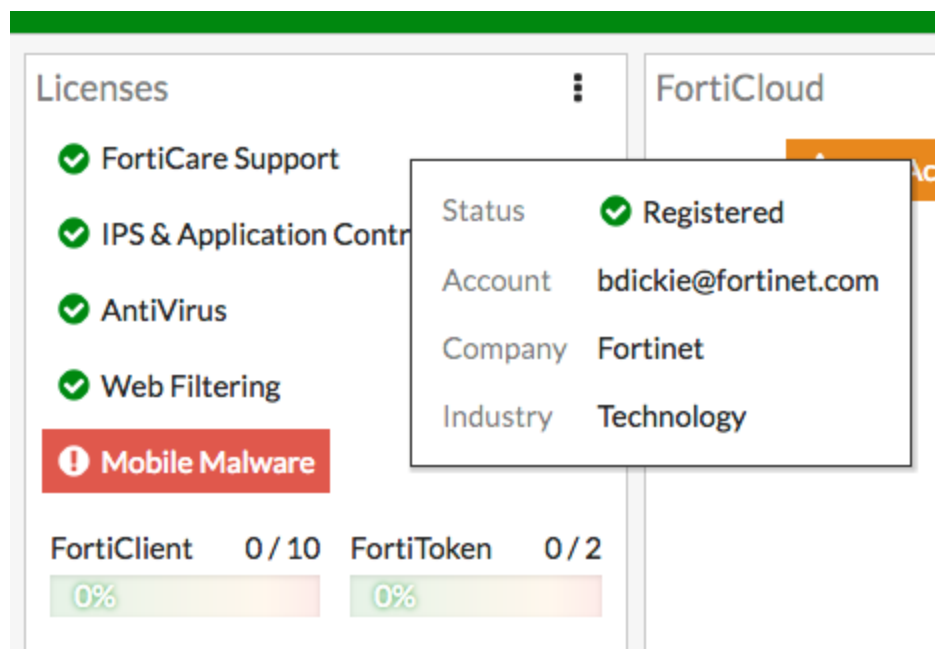
The WAN IP "172.16.113.239" of this FortiGate has been blacklisted by one or more vendors.

Vendor	Reasoning
Antispam_imp_ch	Botnet_traffic
Manitu	Spam_traffic
Fortinet	Malicious_traffic
Spamhaus	Botnet_traffic
Blocklist_de	Credential_harvesting

Licenses

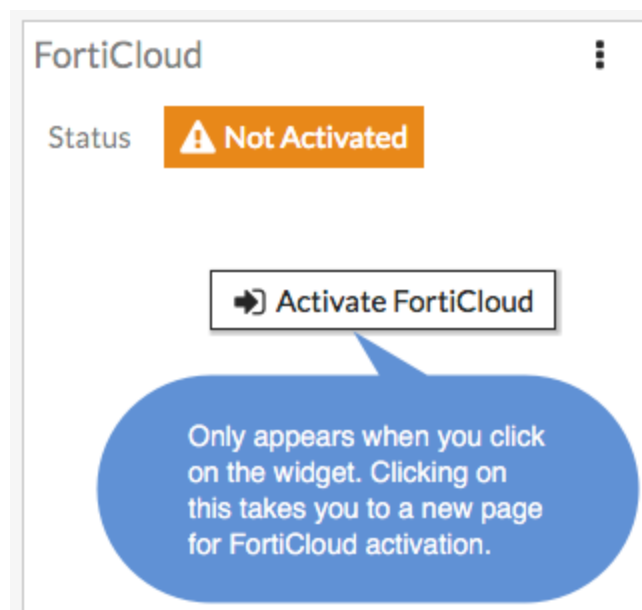
Hovering over the **Licenses** widget will cause status information (and, where applicable, database information) on the licenses to be displayed for **FortiCare Support**, **IPS & Application Control**, **AntiVirus**, **Web Filtering**, **Mobile Malware**, and **FortiClient**. The image below shows **FortiCare Support** information along with the registrant's company name and industry.

Clicking in the **Licenses** widget will provide you with links to other pages, such as **System > FortiGuard** or contract renewal pages.



FortiCloud

This widget displays FortiCloud status and provides a link to activate FortiCloud.

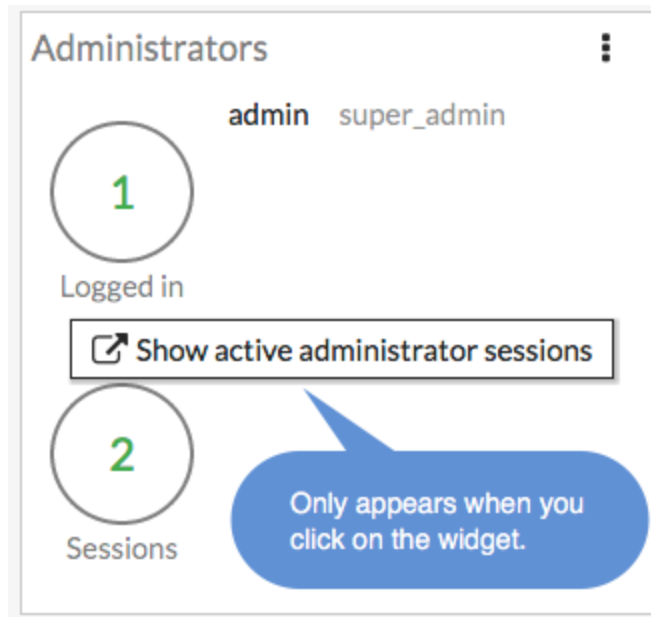


Security Fabric

The **Security Fabric** widget is documented in the [Security Fabric](#) section of the **What's New** document.

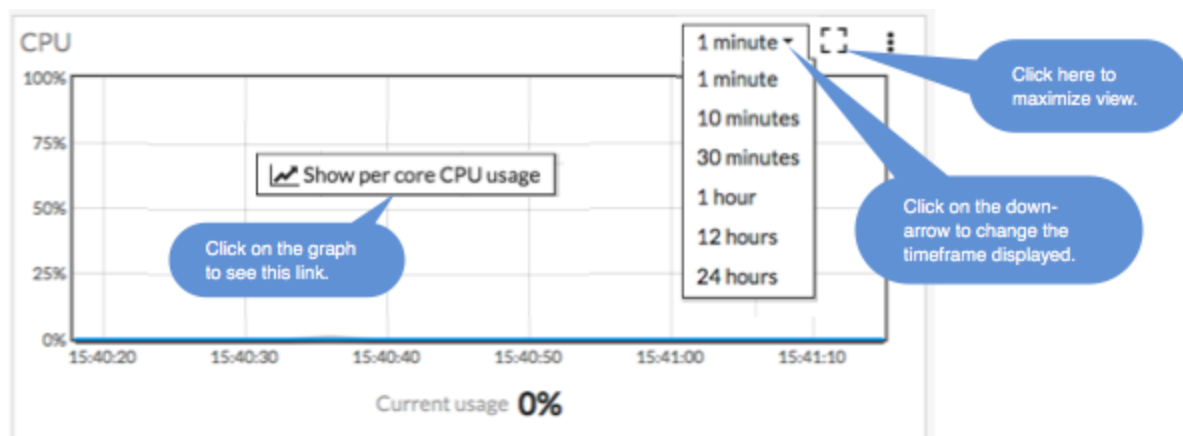
Administrators

This widget allows you to view which administrators are logged in and how many sessions are active. The link directs you to a page displaying active administrator sessions.



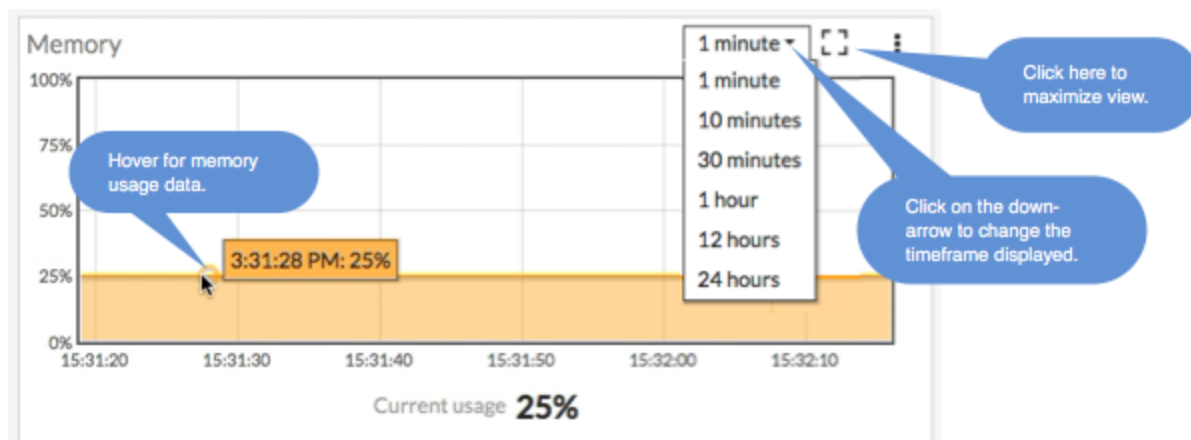
CPU

The real-time CPU usage is displayed for different time frames.

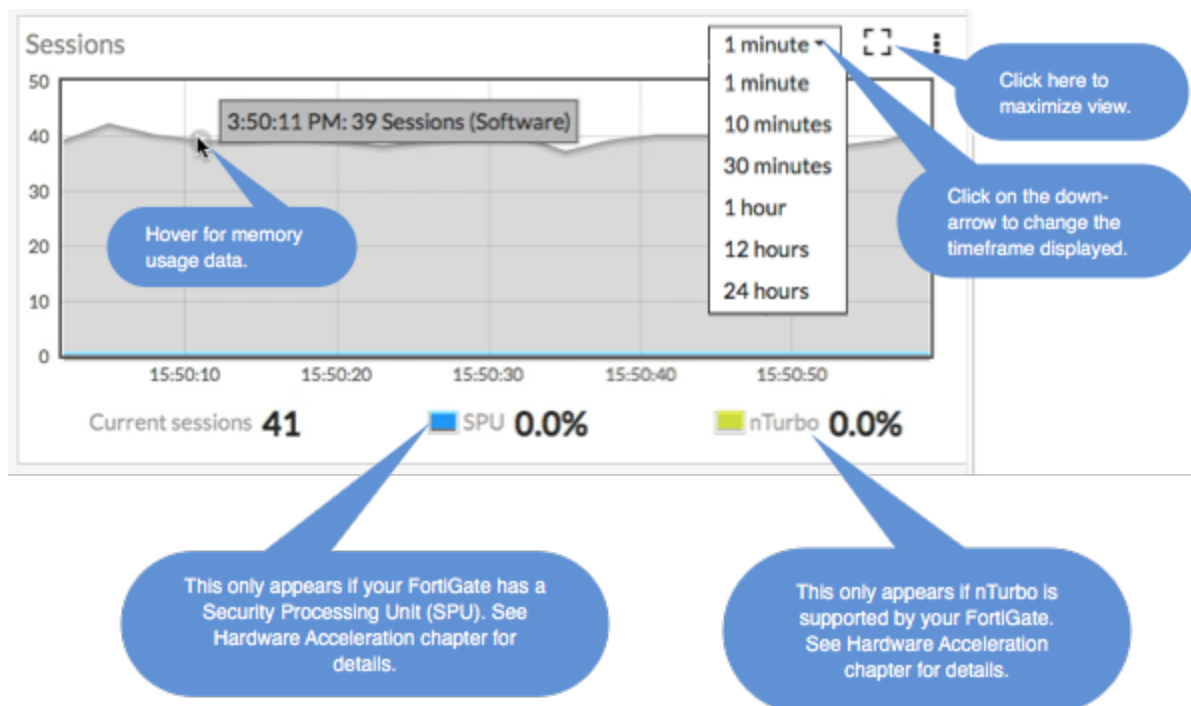


Memory

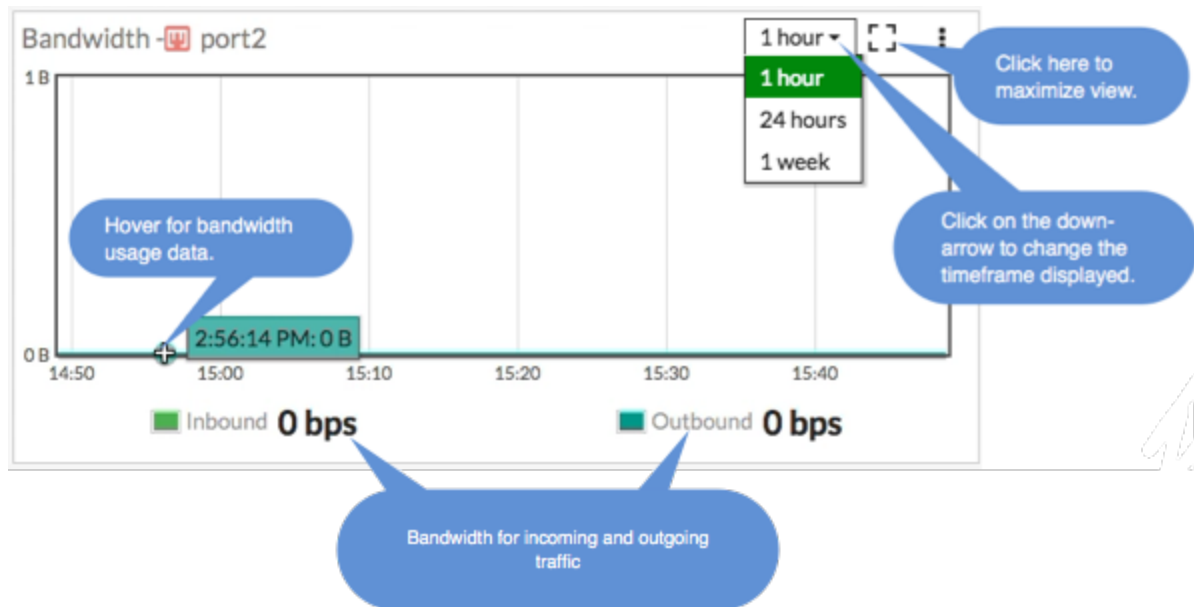
Real-time memory usage is displayed for different time frames. Hovering over any point on the graph displays percentage of memory used along with a timestamp.



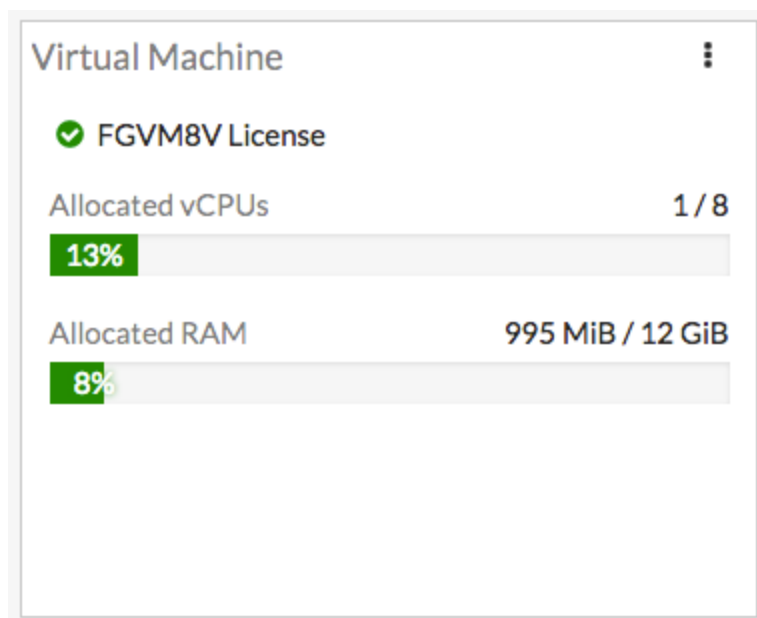
Sessions



Bandwidth



Virtual Machine



FortiOS 5.6.1 introduces a VM widget with these features:

- License status and type.
- CPU allocation usage.
- License RAM usage.
- VMX license information (if the VM supports VMX).

- If the VM license specifies 'unlimited' the progress bar is blank.
- If the VM is in evaluation mode, it is yellow (warning style) and the dashboard show evaluation days used.
- Widget is shown by default in the dashboard of a FortiOS VM device.
- Removed VM information from License widget at **Global > Dashboard**.
- License info and **Upload License** button provided on page **Global > System > FortiGuard**.
- Updated 'Upload VM License' page:
 - Added license RAM usage and VMX instance usage.
 - Replaced file input component.

FortiExplorer for iOS

A new iOS FortiExplorer app is available as of April 8, 2017.

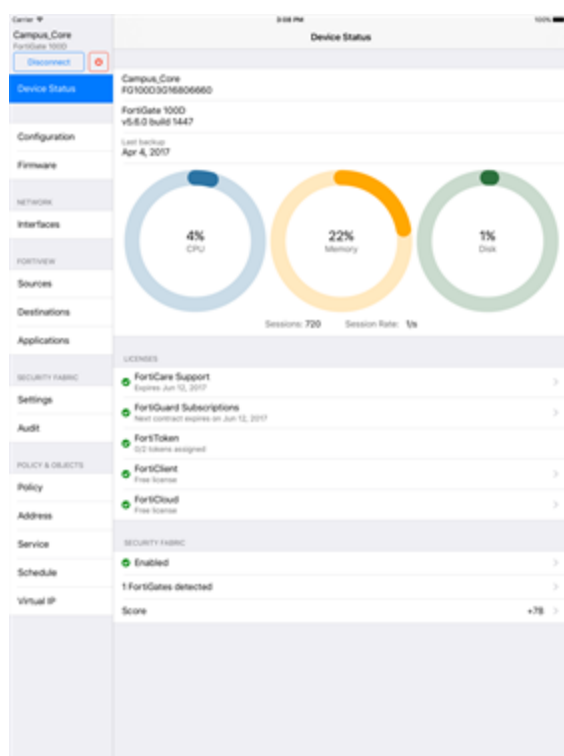
FortExplorer for iOS is compatible with iPhone, iPad, and iPod Touch and supports configuration via REST API and display of FortiView and other security fabric components.

You can use FortiExplorer for iOS to perform most FortiOS configuration management tasks.

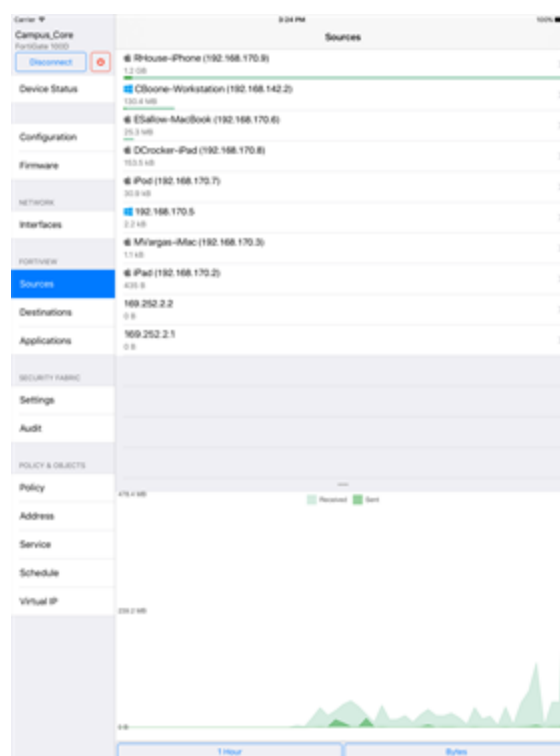
Advanced features will be available with the purchase of an add-on through the App Store. These paid features include the adding more than two devices and downloading firmware images from FortiCare.

With the release of FortiOS 5.6.1, FortiOS icons and colors are now exportable in the GUI shared project and FortiExplorer now uses these icons and colors. This change improves the icon colors only for the FortiExplorer GUI theme (seen only when accessing a web GUI page from within the FortiExplorer iOS app).

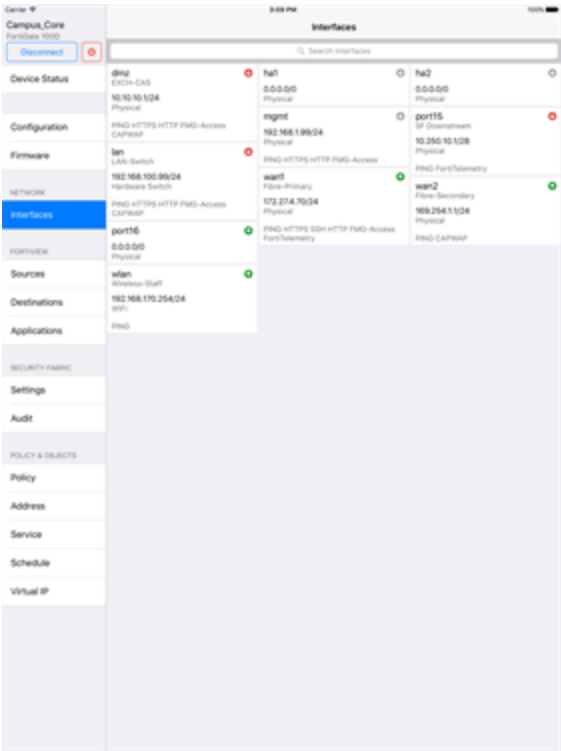
The images below offer a preview of a few of the new FortiExplorer iOS app's screens.



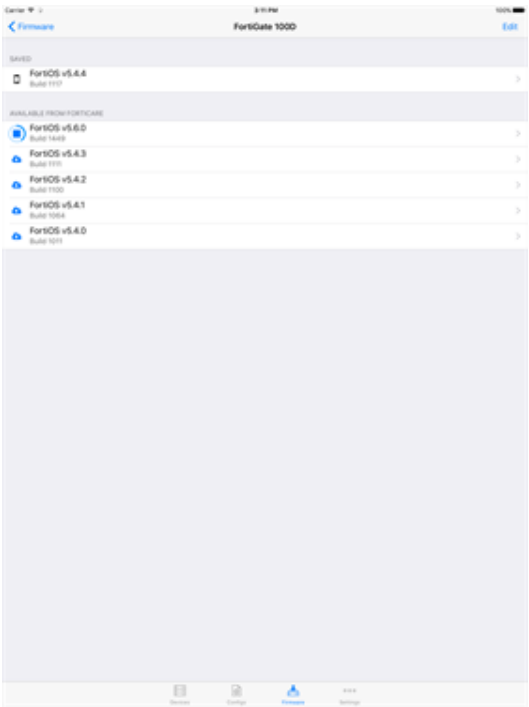
FortiExplorer iOS, v 1.0 - Device Status



FortiExplorer iOS, v. 1.0 - Sources



FortiExplorer iOS, v.1.0 - Device Interfaces



FortiExplorer iOS, v.1.0 - Firmware

Transparent web proxy (386474)

In addition to the Explicit Web Proxy, FortiOS now supports a Transparent web proxy. While it does not have as many features as Explicit Web Proxy, the transparent proxy has the advantage that nothing needs to be done on the user's system to forward supported web traffic over to the proxy. There is no need to reconfigure the browser or publish a PAC file. Everything is transparent to the end user, hence the name. This makes it easier to incorporate new users into a proxy deployment.

You can use the transparent proxy to apply web authentication to HTTP traffic accepted by a firewall policy. In previous versions of FortiOS, web authentication required using the explicit proxy.

Normal FortiOS authentication is IP address based. Users are authenticated according to their IP address and access is allowed or denied based on this IP address. On networks where authentication based on IP address will not work you can use the Transparent Web proxy to apply web authentication that is based on the user's browser and not on their IP address. This authentication method allows you to identify individual users even if multiple users on your network are connecting to the FortiGate from the same IP address.

Using the Transparent proxy

To implement the Transparent proxy, go to **System > Settings** and scroll down to **Operations Settings** and set the inspection mode to **Proxy**.

Operations Settings

Inspection Mode

Flow-based

Proxy

Virtual Domains ☐

Then go to **System > Feature Visibility** and enable **Explicit Proxy**.

Then go to **Security Profiles > Proxy Options**, edit a proxy options profile and under **Web Options** enable **HTTP Policy Redirect**.

Web Options

Chunked Bypass



Add Fortinet Bar










HTTP Policy Redirect



Then go to **Policy & Objects > IPv4 Policy** and create or edit a policy that accepts traffic that you want to apply web authentication to. This can be a general policy that accepts many different types of traffic as long as it also accepts the web traffic that you want to apply web authentication to.

Select a **Security Profile** and select the **Proxy Options** profile that you enabled **HTTP Policy Redirect** for.







Name 	General Internet Access Policy	
Incoming Interface	 port2	▼
Outgoing Interface	 port1	▼
Source	 all	✕
Destination	 all	✕
Schedule	 always	▼
Service	 ALL	✕
Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ACCEPT <input type="checkbox"/> DENY <input type="checkbox"/> LEARN	

Firewall / Network Options

NAT ☒







IP Pool Configuration ☒ Use Outgoing Interface Address ☐ Use Dynamic IP Pool

Security Profiles


AntiVirus	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	 default	
Web Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>		
DNS Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Application Control	<input type="checkbox"/>		
IPS	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Proxy Options		 default	
SSL/SSH Inspection		 certificate-inspection	

Then go to **Policy & Objects > Proxy Policy** create a Transparent Proxy policy to accept the traffic that you want to apply web authentication to. Set the **Proxy Type** to **Transparent Web**. The incoming interface, outgoing interface, destination address, and schedule should either match or be a subset of the same options defined in the IPv4 policy. Addresses added to the Source must match or be a subset of the source addresses added to the IPv4 policy. You can also add the users to be authenticated by the transparent policy to the source field.

Select other transparent policy options as required.

Proxy Type 	Explicit Web Transparent Web FTP
Incoming Interface	 port2 ▼
Outgoing Interface	 port1 ▼
Source	 web_users ✕
Destination Address	 all ✕
Schedule	 always ▼
Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ACCEPT <input type="checkbox"/> DENY

Disclaimer Options

Display Disclaimer	Disable By Domain By Policy By User
Customize Messages <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	 Edit Disclaimer Message

Security Profiles

AntiVirus	<input type="checkbox"/>
Web Filter	<input type="checkbox"/>
Application Control	<input type="checkbox"/>
IPS	<input type="checkbox"/>
Web Proxy Forwarding Server	<input type="checkbox"/>

Logging Options

Log Allowed Traffic <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Security Events All Sessions
Comments	<input type="text" value="Write a comment..."/> 0/1023

More about the transparent proxy

The following changes are incorporated into Transparent proxy, some of which affect Explicit Web Proxy as well.

Flat policies

The split policy feature has been removed. This will make the explicit policy more like the firewall policy.

Authentication

The new authentication design is intended to separate authentication from authorization. Authentication has been moved into a new table in the FortiOS. This leaves the authorization as the domain of the explicit proxy policy.

Previously, if authentication was to be used:

1. The policy would be classified as an identity based policy
2. The policy would be split to add the authentication parameters
3. The authentication method would be selected
4. The user/group would be configured

Now:

The user/group is configured in the proxy policy

1. A new authentication rule is added
2. This option refers to the authentication scheme
3. The authentication scheme has the details of the authentication method

The new authentication work flow for Transparent Proxy:

Toggle the transparent-http-policy match:

```
config firewall profile-protocol-options
edit <profile ID>
config http
set http-policy <enable|disable>
```

If disabled, everything works like before. If enabled, the authentication is triggered differently.

- http-policy work flow:
- For transparent traffic, if there is a regular firewall policy match, when the Layer 7 check option is enabled, traffic will be redirected to WAD for further processing.
- For redirected traffic, layer 7 policy (HTTP policy) will be used to determine how to do security checks.
- If the last matching factor is down to user ID, then it will trigger a new module to handle the L7 policy user authentication.
- Then propagate learned user information back to the system so that it can be used to match traffic for L4 policy.

New Proxy Type

There is a new subcategory of proxy in the proxy policy called **Transparent Web**. The old **Web Proxy** is now referred to as **Explicit Web Proxy**.

- This is set in the firewall policy
- It is available when the HTTP policy is enabled in the profile-protocol options for the firewall policy
- This proxy type supports OSI layer 7 address matching.
- This proxy type should include a source address as a parameter
- Limitations:
 - It can be used for HTTPS traffic, if deep scanning is not used
 - It only supports SNI address matching, i.e. domain names

- It does not support header types of address matching
- It only supports SSO authentication methods, no active authentication methods.

IP pools support

Proxies are now supported on outgoing IP pools.

SOCKSv5

SOCKSv5 authentication is now supported for explicit proxies.

To configure:

```
config authentication rule
edit <name of rule>
set protocol socks
end
```

Forwarding

Proxies support URL redirect/forwarding. This allows a non-proxy forwarding server to be assigned a rule that will redirect web traffic from one URL to another, such as redirecting traffic destined for youtube.com to restrict.youtube.com.

- A new option called "Redirect URL" has been added to the policy
- Traffic forwarding by VIP is supported

Support for explicit proxy address objects & groups into IPv4 firewall policies

This would allow the selection of web filter policy, SSL inspection policy, and proxy policy based on source IP + destination (address|explicit proxy object|category|group of any of those). This enables things like "do full SSL interception on www.google.com, but not the rest of the Search Engines category".

Support application service in the proxy based on HTTP requests.

The application service can be configured using the following CLI commands:

```
config firewall service custom
edit <name of service>
set explicit-proxy enable
set app-service-type <disable|app-id|app-category>
set app-category <application category ID, integer>
set application <application ID, integer>
end
```

CLI

Changes:

Previous	New
<code>config firewall explicit-proxy-policy</code>	<code>config firewall proxy-policy</code>
<code>config firewall explicit-proxy-address</code>	<code>config firewall proxy-address</code>
<code>config firewall explicit-proxy-addrgrp</code>	<code>config firewall proxy-addrgrp</code>
<pre>config firewall explicit-proxy-policy edit <policy ID> set proxy web end</pre>	<pre>config firewall proxy-policy edit <policy ID> set proxy explicit-web end</pre>

Removals:

- "split-policy" from firewall explicit-proxy-policy.

The previous method to set up a split policy was:

```
config firewall explicit-proxy-policy
edit 1
set proxy web
set identity-based enable
config identity-based-policy
edit 1
set schedule "always"
set utm-status enable
set users "guest"
set profile-protocol-options "default"
next
end
next
end
```

- "auth relative" from firewall explicit-proxy-policy

The following attributes have been removed from firewall explicit-proxy-policy:

- identity-based
- ip-based
- active-auth-method
- sso-auth-method
- require-tfa

Moves:

users and groups from

```
firewall explicit-proxy-policy identity-based-policy
to
```

```
config firewall proxy-policy
edit 1
set groups <Group name>
set users <User name>
end
```

Additions:

authentication scheme

```
config authentication scheme
edit <name>
set method [ntlm|basic|digest|form|negotiate|fsso|rsso|none]
```

- `ntlm` - NTLM authentication.
- `basic` - Basic HTTP authentication.
- `digest` - Digest HTTP authentication.
- `form` - Form-based HTTP authentication.
- `negotiate` - Negotiate authentication.
- `fsso` - FSSO authentication.
- `rsso` - RADIUS Single Sign-On authentication.
- `none` - No authentication.

authentication setting

```
config authentication setting
set active-auth-scheme <string>
set sso-auth-scheme <string>
set captive-portal <string>
set captive-portal-port <integer value from 1 to 65535>
```

- `active-auth-scheme` - Active authentication method.
- `sso-auth-scheme` - SSO authentication method.
- `captive-portal` - Captive portal host name.
- `captive-portal-port` - Captive portal port number.

authentication rule

```
config authentication rule
edit <name of rule>
set status [enable|disable]
set protocol [http|ftp|socks]
set srcaddr <name of address object>
set srcaddr6 <name of address object>
set ip-based [enable|disable]
set active-auth-method <string>
set sso-auth-method <string>
set web-auth-cookie [enable|disable]
set transaction-based [enable|disable]
set comments
```

- `status` - Enable/disable auth rule status.
- `protocol` - set protocols to be matched
- `srcaddr /srcaddr6` - Source address name. [`srcaddr` or `srcaddr6`(web proxy only) must be set].
- `ip-based` - Enable/disable IP-based authentication.
- `active-auth-method` - Active authentication method.
- `sso-auth-method` - SSO authentication method (require `ip-based` enabled)
- `web-auth-cookie` - Enable/disable Web authentication cookie.
- `transaction-based` - Enable/disable transaction based authentication.
- `comments` - Comment.

NGFW Policy Mode (397035)

You can operate your FortiGate or individual VDOMs in **Next Generation Firewall (NGFW) Policy Mode**.

You can enable NGFW policy mode by going to **System > Settings**, setting the **Inspection mode** to **Flow-based** and setting the NGFW mode to **Policy-based**. When selecting **NGFW policy-based** mode you also select the SSL/SSH Inspection mode that is applied to all policies

Flow-based inspection with profile-based **NGFW mode** is the default in FortiOS 5.6.

Inspection Mode	Flow-based Proxy
NGFW Mode	Profile-based Policy-based
SSL/SSH Inspection	SSL deep-inspection ▼





Or use the following CLI command:

```
config system settings
  set inspection-mode flow
  set policy-mode {standard | ngfw}
end
```

NGFW policy mode and NAT

If your FortiGate is operating in NAT mode, rather than enabling source NAT in individual NGFW policies you go to **Policy & Objects > Central SNAT** and add source NAT policies that apply to all matching traffic. In many cases you may only need one SNAT policy for each interface pair. For example, if you allow users on the internal network (connected to port1) to browse the Internet (connected to port2) you can add a port1 to port2 Central SNAT policy similar to the following:
















New Central SNAT Policy

Incoming Interface	<div> port1</div> <div>+</div> <div>✕</div>
Outgoing Interface	<div> port2</div> <div>+</div> <div>✕</div>
Source address	<div> all</div> <div>+</div> <div>✕</div>
Destination address	<div> all</div> <div>+</div> <div>✕</div>

☒ NATIP Pool Configuration **Use Outgoing Interface Address** Use Dynamic IP PoolProtocol **ANY** TCP UDP SCTP Specify 0











Application control in NGFW policy mode

You configure **Application Control** simply by adding individual applications to security policies. You can set the action to accept or deny to allow or block the applications.

Name 	Block YouTube	
Incoming Interface	 port1	▼
Outgoing Interface	 port2	▼
Source	 all	✕
	+	
Destination	 all	✕
	+	
Schedule	 always	▼
Service	 ALL	✕
	+	
Application	 YouTube ✕  YouTube_Channel.Access ✕  YouTube_HD.Streaming ✕  YouTube_Video.Access ✕  YouTube_Video.Embedded ✕	
	+	
URL Category	+	
Action	 ACCEPT  DENY  LEARN	

Web Filtering in NGFW mode

You configure **Web Filtering** by adding URL categories to security policies. You can set the action to accept or deny to allow or block the applications.

Name 	Block Streaming Websites		
Incoming Interface	 port1		▼
Outgoing Interface	 port2		▼
Source	 all		✕
	+		
Destination	 all		✕
	+		
Schedule	 always		▼
Service	 ALL		✕
	+		
Application	+		
URL Category	Streaming Media and Download		✕
	+		
Action	 ACCEPT  DENY  LEARN		

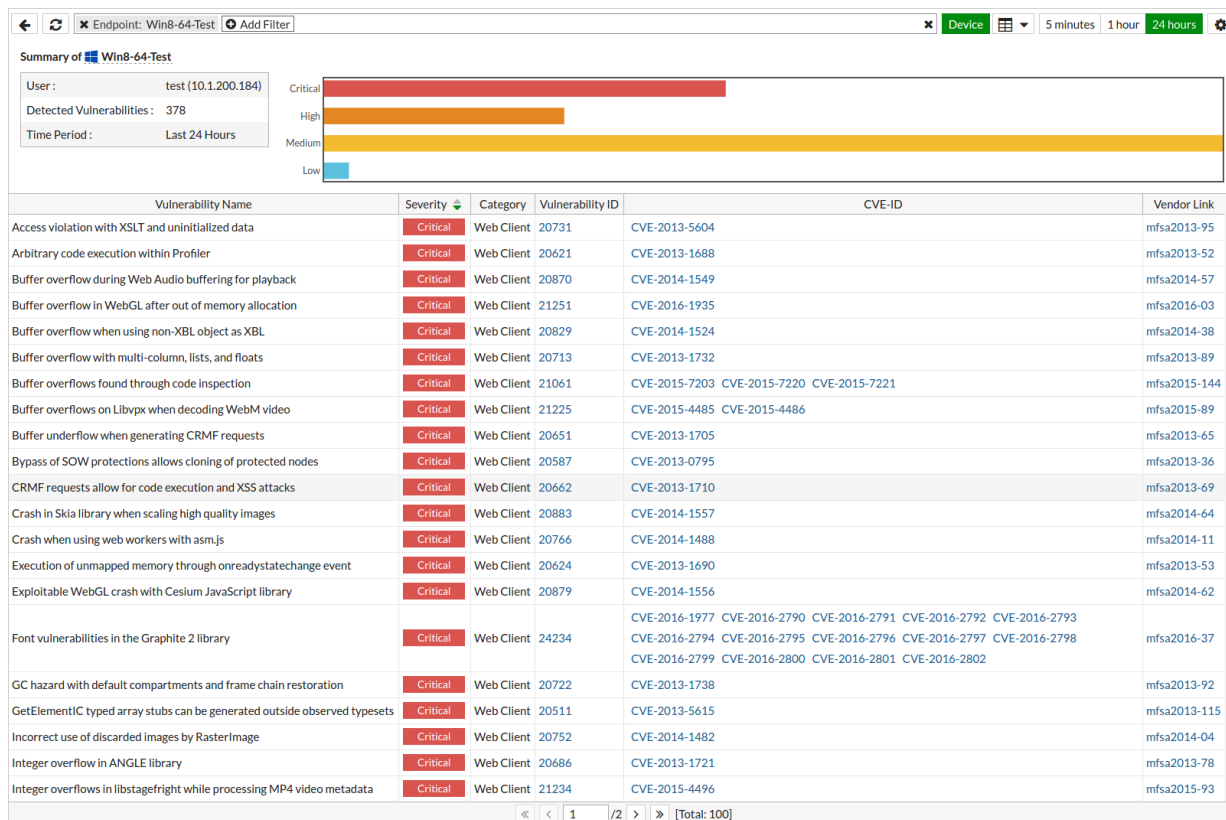
Other NGFW policy mode options

You can also combine both application control and web filtering in the same NGFW policy mode policy. Also if the policy accepts applications or URL categories you can also apply Antivirus, DNS Filtering, and IPS profiles in NGFW mode policies as well a logging and policy learning mode.

New FortiView Endpoint Vulnerability Scanner chart (378647)

FortiOS 5.6.0 adds a new chart to illustrate Endpoint Control events: **Endpoint Vulnerability**.

This is a list/bubble chart, that tracks vulnerability events detected by the FortiClients running on all devices registered with the FortiGate. FortiView displays information about the vulnerability and the device on which it was detected.



Notes about the Endpoint Vulnerability Chart:

- You can sort the list by **Device** or **Vulnerability**.
- You can drill down into any device to see the Vulnerabilities detected. From there, you can drill down to see the exact Vulnerability Scan events that triggered the detection.
- Select any Vulnerability Scan event to see the associated Log data.

FortiClient Profile changes (386267, 375049)

FortiClient profiles have been changed in FortiOS 5.6 to include new protection features and to change organization of the GUI options. FortiClient profiles also use the FortiGate to warn or quarantine endpoints that are not compliant with a FortiClient profile.


A bug that prevented the Dialog and Device Inventory pages from loading when there is a large number of devices (for example, 10,000) has been fixed.

Default FortiClient profile

FortiClient profiles allow you to perform vulnerability scans on endpoints and make sure endpoints are running compliant versions of FortiClient. Also, security posture features cause FortiClient to apply realtime protection, AntiVirus, web filtering, and application control on endpoints.

Profile Name	<input type="text" value="default"/>
Comments	<input type="text" value="Write a comment..."/> 0/255

Telemetry Data

 Endpoints must send telemetry data to FortiGate for Security Fabric.
Non-compliant endpoints will be issued a warning.

Non-compliance action

☒ Endpoint Vulnerability Scan on Client

☐ System Compliance

☐ Security Posture Check

The default FortiClient profile also allows you to set a general **Non-compliance action** for endpoints that don't have FortiClient installed on them. The non-compliance action can be block or warning and is applied by the FortiGate. Blocked endpoints are quarantined by the FortiGate.

Endpoint vulnerability scanning

Similar to FortiOS 5.4 you can set the FortiClient Profile to run the FortiClient vulnerability scanner on endpoints and you can set the Vulnerability quarantine level to quarantine endpoints that don't comply.

Endpoint Vulnerability Scan on Client

Vulnerability quarantine level 


Non-compliance action

The vulnerability scan **Non-compliance action** can block or warn endpoints if the vulnerability scan shows they do not meet the vulnerability quarantine level.

System compliance



FortiOS 5.6 system compliance settings are similar to those in 5.4 with the addition of a non-compliance action. System compliance checking is performed by FortiClient but the non-compliance action is applied by the FortiGate.

System Compliance

Minimum FortiClient version 

Windows endpoints




Mac endpoints

Upload Logs to FortiAnalyzer   ☒ Traffic ☒ Vulnerability
☒ Event

Non-compliance action

Security posture checking

Security posture checking collects realtime protection, antivirus protection, web filtering and application firewall features under the **Security Posture Check** heading.

Security Posture CheckRealtime Protection ☒Up-to-date signatures ☐Scan with FortiSandbox  ☐Third party AntiVirus on Windows   ☐Web Filter ☒Profile WEB default ▼Application Firewall ☒Application Control sensor APP default ▼Non-compliance action Block Warning

Application Control is a free service

Application Control is now a free FortiGuard service and the database for Application Control signatures is separate from the IPS database. However, Botnet Application signatures are still part of the IPS signature database since these are more closely related with security issues and less about application detection.

With the release of FortiOS 5.6.1, Application Control signature database information is displayed under the **System > FortiGuard** page in the FortiCare section. The Botnet category is no longer available when searching the Application Signatures list.



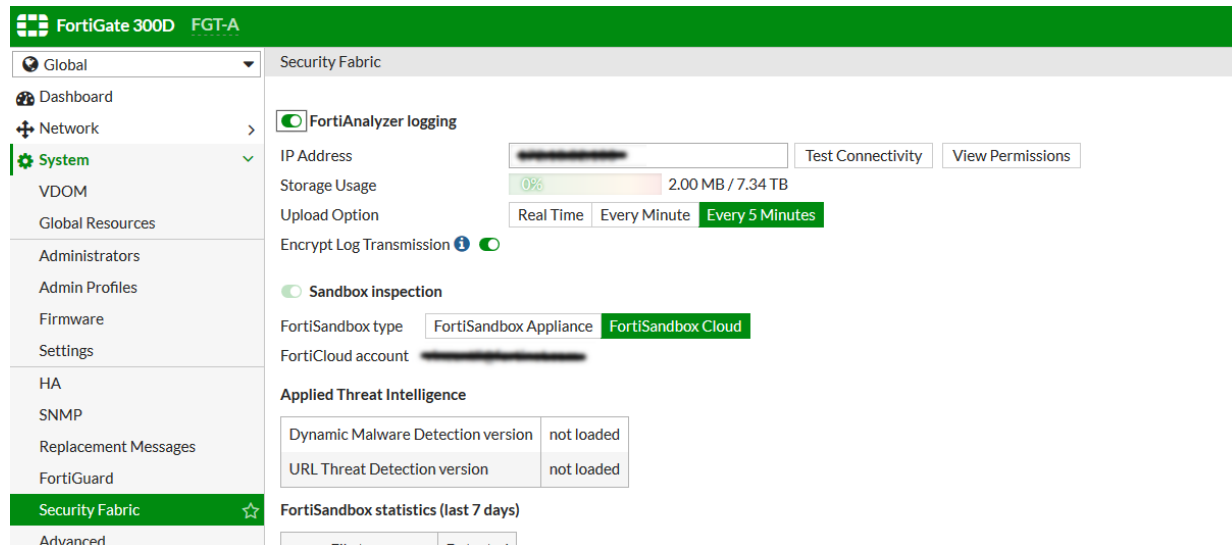
Please note that while the Application Control profile can be used for free, signature database updates require a valid FortiGuard subscription.

IPS / Application Control logging performance

There is a major boost to Application Control and IPS when logging is enabled. With the latest changes, the performance difference with or without logging enabled is negligible.

Real time logging to FortiAnalyzer and FortiCloud

FortiOS 5.6.0 adds new real-time logging options for FortiAnalyzer in **System > Security Fabric** and for FortiCloud in **Log & Report > Log Settings**. The default option is still every 5 minutes, but this will allow near real-time uploading and consistent high-speed compression and analysis.



For FortiAnalyzer, the CLI syntax to enable real-time is:

```
config log fortianalyzer setting
  set upload-option [realtime/1-minute/5-minute]
```

For FortiCloud:

```
config log fortiguard setting
  set upload-option [realtime/1-minute/5-minute]
```

Reliable Logging updated for real-time functionality (378937)

Previously, reliable logging was a feature for buffering and collecting logs for upload, to guarantee that no logs would be dropped before being passed to logging solutions. Reliable logging has been updated for 5.6.0 and is now enabled by default, so that real-time logs do not outpace upload speed.

It can be configured in the CLI with:

```
config log fortianalyzer setting
  set reliable [enable/disable]
```

FortiGate Logs can be sent to syslog servers in Common Event Format (CEF) (300128)

You can configure FortiOS to send log messages to remote syslog servers in CEF format. CEF is an open log management standard that provides interoperability of security-related information between different network devices and applications. CEF data can be collected and aggregated for analysis by enterprise management or Security Information and Event Management (SIEM) systems such as FortiSIEM.

FortiOS supports logging to up to four remote syslog servers. Each server can now be configured separately to send log messages in CEF or CSV format. Previously only CSV format was supported.

Use the following command to configure syslog3 to use CEF format:

```
config log syslog3 setting
    set format cef
end
```

All other syslog settings can be configured as required independently of the log message format including the server address and transport (UDP or TCP). You can also configure filtering for both CEF and CSV formatted log messages.

Controlled failover between wireless controllers

1+1 Wireless Controller HA

Instances of failover between FortiAP units was too long and lead to extended periods of time where WiFi users were without network connection. Because WiFi is considered a primary network connection in today's verticals (including enterprise, retail, education, warehousing, healthcare, government, and more), it is necessary for successful failover to occur as fast as possible.

Primary and secondary ACs

You can now define the role of the primary and secondary controllers on the FortiAP unit, allowing the unit to decide the order in which the FortiAP selects the FortiGate. This process was previously decided on load-based detection, but can now be defined by each unit's pre-determined priority. In addition, heartbeat intervals have been lowered to further improve FortiAP awareness and successful failover.

1+1 redundancy

1+1 HA is a form of resilience whereby a component has a backup component to take its place in the event of component failure, and successfully manage FortiAP without long failover periods.

CLI syntax

```
config wireless-controller inter-controller
  set inter-controller-mode {disable | l2-roaming | 1+1} Default is disable.
  set inter-controller-key <password>
  set inter-controller-pri {primary | secondary} Default is primary.
  set fast-failover-max [3-64] Default is 10.
  set fast-failover-wait [10-86400] Default is 10.
  config inter-controller-peer
    edit <name>
      set peer-ip <ip-address>
      set peer-port [1024-49150] Default is 5246.
      set peer-priority {primary | secondary} Default is primary.
    next
  end
end
```

Multiple PSK for WPA Personal (393320)

New CLI commands have been added, under `config wireless-controller vap`, to configure multiple WiFi Protected Access Pre-Shared Keys (WPA-PSKs), as PSK is more secure without all devices having to share the same PSK.

Note that `mpsk-concurrent-clients` and the `mpsk-key` configuration method are only available when `mpsk` is set to enable.

CLI syntax

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit <example>
  set mpsk {enable|disable}
  set mpsk-concurrent-clients [0-65535] Default is 0.
  config mpsk-key
    edit <key-name>
      set passphrase <wpa-psk>
      set concurrent-clients [0-65535] Default is empty.
      set comment <comments>
    next
  end
end
```

Use the `mpsk-concurrent-clients` entry to set the maximum number of concurrent connected clients for each `mpsk` entry. Use the `mpsk-key` configuration method to configure multiple `mpsk` entries.

Hotspot 2.0 (443988) - FortiOS 5.6.3

Multiple new CLI commands have been added, under `config wireless-controller`, to configure Hotspot 2.0 Access Network Query Protocol (ANQP), a query and response protocol that defines seamless roaming services offered by an AP.

Syntax

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-3gpp-cellular
edit {name}
    config mcc-mnc-list
    edit {id}
        set id {integer}
        set mcc {string}
        set mnc {string}
    next
next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-ip-address-type
edit {name}
    set ipv6-address-type {option}
    set ipv4-address-type {option}
next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-nai-realm
edit {name}
    config nai-list
    edit {name}
        set encoding {enable | disable}
        set nai-realm {string}
        config eap-method
        edit {index}
            set index {integer}
            set method {option}
            config auth-param
            edit {index}
                set index {integer}
                set id {option}
                set val {option}
            next
        next
    next
next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-network-auth-type
edit {name}
    set auth-type {option}
    set url {string}
next
end
```

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-roaming-consortium
  edit {name}
    config oi-list
      edit {index}
        set index {integer}
        set oi {string}
        set comment {string}
      next
    next
  end
```

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 anqp-venue-name
  edit {name}
    config value-list
      edit {index}
        set index {integer}
        set lang {string}
        set value {string}
      next
    next
  end
```

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-conn-capability
  edit {name}
    set icmp-port {option}
    set ftp-port {option}
    set ssh-port {option}
    set http-port {option}
    set tls-port {option}
    set pptp-vpn-port {option}
    set voip-tcp-port {option}
    set voip-udp-port {option}
    set ikev2-port {option}
    set ikev2-xx-port {option}
    set esp-port {option}
  next
end
```

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-operator-name
  edit {name}
    config value-list
      edit {index}
        set index {integer}
        set lang {string}
        set value {string}
      next
    next
  end
```

```
config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-osu-provider
  edit {name}
    config friendly-name
      edit {index}
        set index {integer}
        set lang {string}
        set friendly-name {string}
      next
    next
  end
```

```
        next
        set server-uri {string}
        set osu-method {option}
        set osu-nai {string}
        config service-description
            edit {service-id}
                set service-id {integer}
                set lang {string}
                set service-description {string}
            next
        set icon {string}
    next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 h2qp-wan-metric
    edit {name}
        set link-status {option}
        set symmetric-wan-link {option}
        set link-at-capacity {enable | disable}
        set uplink-speed {integer}
        set downlink-speed {integer}
        set uplink-load {integer}
        set downlink-load {integer}
        set load-measurement-duration {integer}
    next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 hs-profile
    edit {name}
        set access-network-type {option}
        set access-network-internet {enable | disable}
        set access-network-asra {enable | disable}
        set access-network-esr {enable | disable}
        set access-network-uesa {enable | disable}
        set venue-group {option}
        set venue-type {option}
        set hessid {mac address}
        set proxy-arp {enable | disable}
        set l2tif {enable | disable}
        set pame-bi {enable | disable}
        set anqp-domain-id {integer}
        set domain-name {string}
        set osu-ssid {string}
        set gas-comeback-delay {integer}
        set gas-fragmentation-limit {integer}
        set dgaf {enable | disable}
        set deauth-request-timeout {integer}
        set wnm-sleep-mode {enable | disable}
        set bss-transition {enable | disable}
        set venue-name {string}
        set roaming-consortium {string}
        set nai-realm {string}
        set oper-friendly-name {string}
        config osu-provider
            edit {name}
                next
            set wan-metrics {string}
```

```
        set network-auth {string}
        set 3gpp-plmn {string}
        set conn-cap {string}
        set qos-map {string}
        set ip-addr-type {string}
    next
end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 icon
    edit {name}
        config icon-list
            edit {name}
                set lang {string}
                set file {string}
                set type {option}
                set width {integer}
                set height {integer}
            next
        next
    end

config wireless-controller hotspot20 qos-map
    edit {name}
        config dscp-except
            edit {index}
                set index
                set dscp
                set up
            next
        config dscp-range
            edit {index}
                set index
                set up
                set low
                set high
            next
        next
    end
```


VXLAN support (289354)

Virtual Extensible LAN (VXLAN) is a network virtualization technology used in large cloud computing deployments. It encapsulates OSI layer 2 Ethernet frames within layer 3 IP packets using standard destination port 4789. VXLAN endpoints that terminate VXLAN tunnels can be virtual or physical switch ports, are known as VXLAN tunnel endpoints (VTEPs). For more information about VXLAN, see [RFC 7348](#).

VTEP (VXLAN Tunnel End Point) support (289354)

Native VXLAN is now supported by FortiOS. This feature is configurable from the CLI only:

Syntax

```
config system vxlan
  edit <vxlan1> //VXLAN device name (Unique name in system.interface).
    set interface //Local outgoing interface.
    set vni //VXLAN network ID.
    set ip-version //IP version to use for VXLAN device (4 or 6).
    set dstport //VXLAN destination port, default is 4789.
    set ttl //VXLAN TTL.
    set remote-ip //Remote IP address of VXLAN.
  next
end
```

This will create a VXLAN interface:

```
show system interface vxlan1
config system interface
  edit "vxlan1"
    set vdom "root"
    set type vxlan
    set snmp-index 36
    set macaddr 8a:ee:1d:5d:ae:53
    set interface "port9"
  next
end
```

From the GUI, go to **Network > Interfaces** to verify the new VXLAN interface:

vxlan (1)			
	vxlan1	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	interface_type:vxlan 0

To diagnose your VXLAN configuration, from the CLI, use the following command:

```
diagnose sys vxlan fdb list vxlan1
```

This command provides information about the VXLAN forwarding data base (fdb) associated to the vxlan1 interface. Below is a sample output:

```
-----mac=00:00:00:00:00:00 state=0x0082 flags=0x00-----
-----remote_ip=2.2.2.2 remote_port=4789-----
-----remote_vni=1 remote_ifindex=19-----
total fdb num: 1
```

VXLAN support for multiple remote IPs (398959)

VXLAN is now supported for multiple remote IPs, these remote IPs can be IPv4 unicast, IPv6 unicast, IPv4 multicast, or IPv6 multicast. This is useful in datacenter scenarios where the FortiGate can be configured with multiple tunnels to computer nodes.

CLI changes

`set ip-version` option can be set to the following:

`ipv4-unicast` //Use IPv4 unicast addressing for VXLAN.

`ipv6-unicast` //Use IPv6 unicast addressing for VXLAN.

`ipv4-multicast` //Use IPv4 multicast addressing for VXLAN.

`ipv6-multicast` //Use IPv6 multicast addressing for VXLAN.

When `ip-version` is set to `ipv4-multicast` or `ipv6-multicast`, `ttl` option is replaced by `multicast-ttl`.

New PPPoE features

PPPoE dynamic gateway support (397628)

Original design for PPPoE requires to configure a static gateway. Although it works in many scenarios, some customers require to add support for dynamic gateway for internet-service based routes.

No changes to the CLI neither to the GUI.

Support multiple PPPoE connections on a single interface (363958)

Multiple PPPoE connections on a single physical or vlan interface are now supported by the FortiGate. In addition the interface can be on demand PPPoE.

GUI

New Interface

Interface Name

Alias

Type VLAN

Interface dmz

VLAN ID 0

Role LAN

Address

Addressing mode Manual DHCP PPPoE

IP/Network Mask 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0

Restrict Access

Administrative Access

☐ HTTPS ☐ PING ☐ HTTP ☐ FMG-Access ☐ CAPWAP
☐ SSH ☐ SNMP ☐ FTM ☐ RADIUS Accounting
☐ FortiTelemetry

☐ DHCP Server

Networked Devices

Device Detection ☐

Admission Control

Security Mode None

Miscellaneous

Scan Outgoing Connections to Botnet Sites Disable Block Monitor

Enable Explicit Web Proxy ☐

☐ Secondary IP Address

Status

Comments 0/255

CLI

```

config system pppoe-interface
edit <name>
    set dial-on-demand [enable|disable]
    set ipv6 [enable|disable]
    set device <interface>
    set username <string>
    set password <string>
    set auth-type [auto|pap|chap|mschapv1|mschapv2]
    set ipunnumbered <class_ip>
    set pppoe-unnumbered-negotiate [enable|disable]
    set idle-timeout <integer>
    set disc-retry-timeout <integer>
    set padt-retry-timeout <integer>
    set service-name <string>
    set ac-name <string>

```

```
set lcp-echo-interval <integer>
set lcp-max-echo-fails <integer>
```

- `dial-on-demand` - Enable/disable the dial on demand feature
- `ipv6` - Enable/disable the use of IPv6.
- `device` - The name of the physical interface.
- `username` - User name for credentials
- `password` - Password matching the above username
- `auth-type` - The type of PPP authentication to be used.
 - `auto` - Automatic choice of authentication
 - `pap` - PAP authentication
 - `chap` - CHAP authentication
 - `mschapv1` - MS-CHAPv1 authentication
 - `mschapv2` - MS-CHAPv2 authentication
- `ipunnumbered` - PPPoE unnumbered IP.
- `pppoe-unnumbered-negotiate` - Enable/disable PPPoE unnumbered negotiation.
- `idle-timeout` - Idle time in seconds before PPPoE auto disconnects. 0 (zero) for no timeout.
- `disc-retry-timeout` - Timeout value in seconds for PPPoE initial discovery. 0 to 4294967295. Default = 1.
- `padt-retry-timeout` - Timeout value in seconds for PPPoE termination. 0 to 4294967295. Default = 1.
- `service-name` - PPPoE service name.)
- `ac-name` - PPPoE AC name.
- `lcp-echo-interval` - Interval in seconds allowed for PPPoE LCP echo. 0 to 4294967295. Default = 5.
- `lcp-max-echo-fails` - Maximum number of missed LCP echo messages before disconnect. 0 to 4294967295. Default = 3.

Adding Internet services to firewall policies (389951)

In 5.4, support was added for Internet Service objects which could be used with **FortiView**, **Logging**, **Routing** and **WAN Load Balancing**. Now they can be added to firewall policies as well.



There is an either or relationship between Internet Service objects and destination address and service combinations in firewall policies. This means that a destination address and service can be specified in the policy OR an Internet service, not both.

CLI

The related CLI options/syntax are:

```
config firewall policy
edit 1
set internet-service 1 5 10
set internet-service-custom test
set internet-service-negate [enable|disable]
end
```

GUI

In the policy listing page you will notice that if an Internet Service object is used, it will be found in both the **Destination** and **Service** column.

In the policy editing page the **Destination Address**, now **Destination** field now has two types, **Address** and **Internet Service**.

New Policy		Select Entries
Name	Citrix access	<div>Address Internet Service</div> <div>Search</div> <div> Citrix-FTP(S) Citrix-IMAP(S) Citrix-NetBIOS.Name.Service Citrix-NetBIOS.Session.Service Citrix-SMTP(S) Citrix-SSH Citrix-Web CNN-FTP(S) CNN-SMTP(S) Dropbox-DNS Dropbox-NetBIOS.Name.Service </div>
Incoming Interface	port1	
Outgoing Interface	port2	
Source	all	
Destination	<div> Citrix-DNS Citrix-FTP(S) Citrix-IMAP(S) Citrix-NetBIOS.Name.Service Citrix-NetBIOS.Session.Service Citrix-SMTP(S) Citrix-SSH Citrix-Web CNN-FTP(S) </div>	

Combining source and destination NAT in the same policy (388718)

The Service field has been added to Virtual IP objects. When `service` and `portforward` are configured, only a single mapped port can be configured. However, multiple external ports can be mapped to that single internal port.

```
config firewall vip
  edit "vip1"
    set type load-balance
    set service "HTTP-8080" "HTTP" <----- New Service field, accepts Service/Service
      group names
    set extip 20.0.0.0-20.0.255.255
    set extintf "wan1"
    set portforward enable
    set mappedip "30.0.0.1"
    set mappedport 100 <----- single port
  end
```

The reason for making this configuration possible is to allow complex scenarios where multiple sources of traffic are using multiple services to connect to a single computer, while requiring a combination of source and destination NAT and not requiring numerous VIPs bundled into VIP groups.



VIPs with different services will be considered non-overlapping.

Name

Comments 0/255

Network

Interface

Type Static NAT

External IP Address/Range -

Mapped IP Address/Range -

Optional Filters ☒

Source address

Services ☒ ☒ HTTP ☒ HTTPS

Port Forwarding ☒

Map to Port

NP6 Host Protection Engine (HPE) adds protection for DDoS attacks (363398)

NP6 processors now include HPE functionality that can protect networks from DoS attacks by categorizing incoming packets based on packet rate and processing cost and applying packet shaping to packets that can cause DoS attacks. You can use the options in the following CLI command to limit the number packets per second received for various packet types by each NP6 processor. This rate limiting is applied very efficiently because it is done in hardware by the NP6 processor.

HPE protection is disabled by default. You can use the following command to enable HPE protection for the NP6_0 NP6 processor:

```
config system np6
  edit np6_0
    config hpe
      set enable-shaper enable
    end
```

HPE can be enabled and configured separately for each NP6 processor. When enabled, the default configuration is designed to provide basic DoS protection. You can use the following command to adjust the HPE settings in real time if your network is experiencing an attack. For example, the following command allows you to configure HPE settings for np6_0.

```
config system np6
  edit np6_0
    config hpe
      set tcpsyn-max
      set tcp-max
      set udp-max
      set icmp-max
      set sctp-max
      set esp-max
      set ip-frag-max
      set ip-others-max
      set arp-max
      set l2-others-max
      set enable-shaper {disable | enable}
    end
```

Where:

tcpsyn-max applies shaping based on the maximum number of TCP SYN packets received per second. The range is 10,000 to 4,000,000,000 pps. The default limits the number of packets per second to 5,000,000 pps.

tcp-max applies shaping based on the maximum number of TCP packets received. The range is 10,000 to 4,000,000,000 pps. The default is 5,000,000 pps.

udp-max applies shaping based on the maximum number of UDP packets received. The range is 10,000 to 4,000,000,000 pps. The default is 5,000,000 pps.

icmp-max applies shaping based on the maximum number of ICMP packets received. The range is 10,000 to 4,000,000,000 pps. The default is 1,000,000 pps.

`sctp-max` applies shaping based on the maximum number of SCTP packets received. The range is 10,000 to 4,000,000,000 pps. The default is 100,000 pps.

`esp-max` NPU HPE shaping based on the maximum number of IPsec ESP packets received. The range is 10,000 to 4,000,000,000 pps. The default is 100,000 pps.

`ip-frag-max` applies shaping based on the maximum number of fragmented IP packets received. The range is 10,000 to 4,000,000,000 pps. The default is 100,000 pps.

`ip-others-max` applies shaping based on the maximum number of other IP packets received. The range is 10,000 to 4,000,000,000 pps. The default is 100,000 pps.

`arp-max` applies shaping based on the maximum number of ARP packets received. The range is 10,000 to 4,000,000,000 pps. The default is 1,000,000 pps.

`l2-others-max` applies shaping based on the maximum number of other layer 2 packets received. The range is 10,000 to 4,000,000,000 pps. The default is 100,000 pps.

New feature catalog (5.6.3, 5.6.1 and 5.6)

The following sections list all of the new features in FortiOS 5.6, 5.6.1, and 5.6.3 organized alphabetically by subject area.

Getting Started (5.6.3)

New Getting Started features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

Administrator password changes (414927)

The existing Change Password dialog that appears in the GUI is updated to reflect the new look of the password change prompt at login.

- Added inline validation for checking password policy and password reuse
- Changed style to match new login prompt password change
- Fixed issue where fDialog would close slide out on submission failure

Support FortiOS to allow user to select domain when logging a FG into FortiCloud (452350)

Support has been added to show a list of all possible FortiCloud domains that the FortiGate can be served by.

Syntax

```
execute fortiguard-log domain
```

This command is typically used for testing purposes, and so it will not appear when entering `execute fortiguard-log ?`.

Getting Started (5.6.1)

New Getting Started features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

VM License visibility improvement (423347)

VM License GUI items have changed as follows:

- Added VM widget to **Global > Dashboard**. Includes the following:
 - License status and type.
 - CPU allocation usage.
 - License RAM usage.
 - VMX license information (if the VM supports VMX).

- If the VM license specifies 'unlimited' the progress bar is blank.
- If the VM is in evaluation mode, it is yellow (warning style) and the dashboard show evaluation days used.
- Widget is shown by default in the dashboard of a FortiOS VM device.
- Removed VM information from License widget at **Global > Dashboard**.
- License info and **Upload License** button provided on page **Global > System > FortiGuard**.
- Updated 'Upload VM License' page:
 - Added license RAM usage and VMX instance usage.
 - Replaced file input component.

CLI Syntax

```
config sys admin
  edit <name>
    config gui-dashboard
      edit <1>
        set name <name>
        config widget
          edit <2>
            set type {vminfo | ...} <- new option
            set x-pos <2>
            set y-pos <1>
            set width <1>
            set height <1>
          next
        end
      next
    end
  next
end
```

FortiView Dashboard Widget (434179)

Added a new widget type to the dashboard for top level FortiView. FortiView widgets have report-by, sort-by, visualization, timeframe properties, and filters subtable in the CLI.

Supported FortiViews include Source, Destination, Application, Country, Interfaces, Policy, Wifi Client, Traffic Shaper, Endpoint Vulnerability, Cloud User, Threats, VPN, Websites, and Admin and System Events.

Bubble, table, chord chart, and country visualizations are supported in the widget.

Widgets can be saved from a filtered FortiView page on to a dashboard.

Syntax

```
config system admin
  config gui-dashboard
    config widget
      set type fortiview
      set report-by {source | destination | country | intfpair | srcintf | dstintf |
        policy | wificlient | shaper | endpoint | application | cloud | web | threat
        | system | unauth | admin | vpn}
      set timeframe {realtime | 5min | hour | day | week}
      set sort-by <string>
      set visualization {table | bubble | country | chord}
      config filters
```

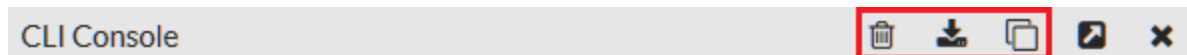
```
        set key <filter_key>
        set value <filter_value>
    end
end
end
end
end
```

Where:

- `report-by` = Field to aggregate the data by.
- `timeframe` = Timeframe period of reported data.
- `sort-by` = Field to sort the data by.
- `visualization` = Visualization to use.

Controls added to GUI CLI console (422623)

FortiOS 5.6.1 introduces new options in the browser CLI console to export the console history. Options are now available to **Clear console**, **Download**, and **Copy to clipboard**.



FortiExplorer icon enhancement (423838)

FortiOS icons and colors are now exportable in the GUI shared project and FortiExplorer now uses these icons and colors. This change improves the icon colors only for the FortiExplorer GUI theme (seen only when accessing a web GUI page from within the FortiExplorer iOS app).

The following locations were affected: Policy List, Policy Dialogue, Address List, Address Dialogue, Virtual IP list, Virtual IP Dialogue.

Getting Started (5.6)

New Getting Started features added to FortiOS 5.6.

Change to CLI console (396225)

The CLI Console widget has been removed from FortiOS 5.6.0. It is accessed from the upper-right hand corner of the screen and is no longer a pop-out window but a sliding window.

System Information Dashboard widget WAN IP Information enhancement (401464)

WAN IP and location data are now available in the **System Information** widget. Additionally, If the WAN IP is blacklisted in the FortiGuard server, there will be a notification in the notification area, located in the upper right-hand corner of the **Dashboard**. Clicking on the notification will open the WAN IP Blacklisted slider with the relevant blacklist information.

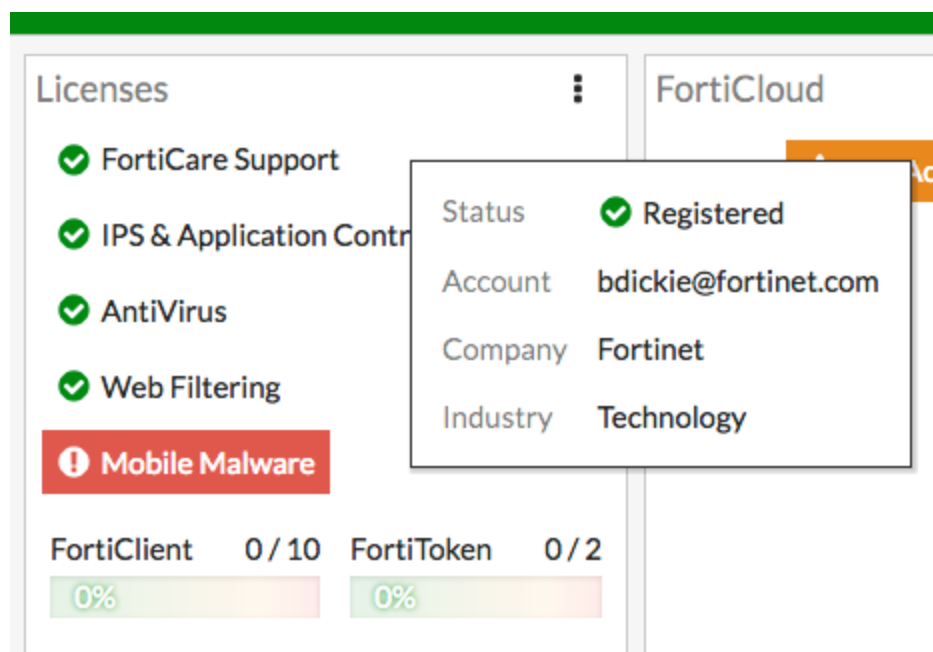
CLI and GUI changes to display FortiCare registration information (395254)

The changes pertain to industry and organization size of the FortiGate's registered owner.

GUI Changes

- Add industry and organization size to FortiCare registration page
- Add company and industry to license widget tooltip for FortiCare

When you hover over the Licenses widget in the FortiOS 5.6 dashboard, you can see the company and industry data, provided it has been entered in the FortiCare profile.



CLI Changes

Commands are added to diagnose forticare

```

dia forticare direct-registration product-registration -h
Options: a:A:y:C:c:T:eF:f:hI:i:l:O:o:p:P:z:R:r:S:s:t:v:
  --<long> -<short>
  account_id a:
  address A:
  city y:
  company C:
  contract_number c:
  country_code T:
  existing_account e
  fax F:
  first_name f:
  help h


```

```
industry I:
industry_id i:
last_name l:
orgsize O:
orgsize_id o:
password p:
phone P:
postal_code z:
reseller R:
reseller_id r:
state S:
state_code s:
title t:
version v:
```

Improved GUI for Mobile Screen Size & Touch Interface (355558)

The FortiOS web GUI on mobile screens and include functionality for touch interfaces like tap to hold are improved.

Setup Wizard removed

Previously, the Setup Wizard could be launched from the web GUI by selecting the  button, located in the top right corner. This button and the wizard in question has been removed.

Authentication (5.6.3)

New authentication features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

Certificate Import page updates (267949)

The importation of a non-CA certificate into FortiGate CA store now shows a warning message showing why the import didn't work (as expected).

Improvements to the execute fortitoken import command (401979)

The `execute fortitoken import` command has been removed and replaced by three new commands, allowing the importation of FortiToken seed files from either an FTP server, a TFTP server, or a USB drive:

- `execute fortitoken import ftp <file name> <ip>[:ftp port] <Enter> <user> <password>`
- `execute fortitoken import tftp <file name> <ip>`
- `execute fortitoken import usb <file name>`

These commands allow seed files to be imported from an external source more easily.

Improved 2FA workflow in GUI (405487, 409100, 444430, 446856, 456752)

Various improvements to the two-factor authentication workflow in the GUI which addressed the following issues:

- No email was sent after creating an administrator account with a FortiToken.
- Inconsistent view on admin and user dialog.
- Empty activation codes would be sent.
- If Norway was selected as the country code for a user, the phone number was not recognized after saving.
- Couldn't select custom SMS server when setting the phone number.
- When a FortiToken from a non-management VDOM was selected for an admin, the activation code wouldn't be sent.

Support FTM Push when FortiAuthenticator is the authentication server (408273, 438314)

FortiGate supports when the FortiAuthenticator initiates FTM Push notifications, for when users are attempting to authenticate through a VPN and/or RADIUS (with FortiAuthenticator as the RADIUS server).

Support exact match for subject and CN fields in peer user (416359)

Administrators can now specify which way a peer user authenticates, in order to avoid any unintentional admin access by a regular user. When searching for a matching certificate, use the commands below to control how to find matches in the certificate subject name (`subject-match`) or the cn attribute (`cn-match`) of the certificate subject name. This match can be any string (`substring`) or an exact match (`value`) of the cn attribute value.

Syntax

```
config vpn certificate setting
  edit <name>
    set subject-match {substring | value}
    set cn-match {substring | value}
  next
end
```

FortiToken GUI improvement (435229)

Various FortiToken import functionalities have been improved in the GUI, including the ability to import from serial number file correctly, validation of serial numbers once imported, and removing the Activate button once a token has already been activated.

Improve FTM Push notification workflow (436642, 448734)

Updated GUI and logincheck module to use a non-blocking version of the FTM Push notification procedure and periodically polls the device for any status updates from fam daemon.

FortiClient shares Social ID data with FortiOS (438610)

Support has been added to record the social ID data from FortiClient so that if an email or phone number is changed on FortiClient, the new values are updated on the FortiGate.

The data will be sent in KeepAlive messages in the following format:

```
USR_NAME|<full name for the service account>|USR_EMAIL|<email for the service account>|SERVICE|<os|custom|linkedin|google|salesforce>|
```

Wildcard certificate support/handling for SAN/CN reference identifiers (440307)

As a requirement of Network Device Collaborative Protection Profile (NDcPP), FortiOS supports and handles the use of wildcards for the following certificate reference parameters:

- Subject Alternative Name (SAN)
- Common Name (CN)

Support for FTP and TFTP to update certificates (441695)

Support has been added for FTP and TFTP servers to update the certificate bundle using a new `execute` command.

Syntax

```
execute vpn certificate ca import bundle <file-name.pkg> <ftp/tftp-server-ip>
```

Global option to enable/disable SHA1 algorithm in SSH key exchanges (444827)

Support has been added for a global option to enable/disable SHA1 algorithm in SSH key exchanges. The algorithm is enabled by default and provides administrators with the ability to disable the option for the purposes

of security and compliance testing.

Syntax

```
config system global
  set ssh-kex-shal {enable | disable}
end
```

Support for HTTP tunnel authentication (449406)

Support has been added for an option to trigger user authentication on HTTP CONNECT request at the policy level. A new CLI entry has been added under `config firewall proxy-policy` which will trigger the authentication process `get-user`, even when there is no user or group configured.

Note that, as shown below, explicit web proxy must be set.

Syntax

```
config firewall proxy-policy
  edit {policyid}
    set proxy explicit-web
    set http-tunnel-auth {enable | disable}
  next
end
```

Authentication (5.6.1)

New authentication features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

IPv6 RADIUS Support (309235, 402437, 439773)

RADIUS authentication is supported with IPv6, allowing administrators to configure an IPv6 RADIUS server on the FortiGate for IPv6 RADIUS authentication traffic to pass between the server and FortiGate.



Note that while you can set the primary RADIUS server's IPv6 address, the source IP address for communications to the RADIUS server cannot be configured as IPv6.

Syntax

Allow IPv6 access on an interface:

```
config system interface
  edit <name>
    config ipv6
      set ip6-allowaccess {ping | https | ssh | snmp | http | telnet | fgfm | capwap}
      set ip6-address <xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx/xxx>
    next
  next
end
```

Configure the IPv6 RADIUS server:

```

config user radius
  edit <name>
    set server <xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx>
    ...
  next
end

```

Full certificate chain CRL checking (407988)

Certificate revocation/status check for peer certificates and intermediate CAs is now supported. Redesigned `fnbam_auth_cert()` API to use stack type of X509 instead of array for certificate chain. Removed obsolete `fnbam` API and parameters. Now `authd`, `sslvpn`, and GUI send full certificate chains to `fnbamd` for verification.

New option under user > setting to allow/forbid SSL renegotiation in firewall authentication (386595)

A new option `auth-ssl-allow-renegotiation` is now available under `config user setting` to allow/forbid renegotiation. The default value is `disable`, where a session would be terminated by `authd` once renegotiation is detected and this login would be recorded as failure. Other behavior follows regular auth settings.

Syntax

```

config user setting
  set auth-ssl-allow-renegotiation {enable | disable}
end

```

New option to allow spaces in RADIUS DN format (422978)

Previously, IKEv2 RADIUS group authentication introduced a regression because it removed spaces from ASN.1 DN peer identifier string.

Reverted default DN format to include spaces. Added a new CLI option `ike-dn-format` to allow the user to select either `with-space` or `no-space`. Customers using the `group-authentication` option can select the `ike-dn-format` setting to match the format used in their RADIUS user database.

Added LDAP filter when group-member-check is user-attr (403140)

Added LDAP filter when `group-member-check` is `user-attr`. LDAP filter is deployed when checking user attribute.

Syntax

```

config user ldap
  edit <name>
    set group-filter ?
  next
end

```

- `group-filter` is `none` by default, where the process is the same as before. When `group-filter` is set, the LDAP filter takes effect for retrieving the group information.

Added Refresh button to the LDAP browser (416649)

Previously, cached LDAP data was used even if the LDAP server configuration was updated.

In FortiOS 5.6.1, a **Refresh** button has been added in the LDAP browser. In the LDAP server dialog page, the user can delete the DN field to browse the root level tree when clicking the **Fetch DN** button.

Differentiate DN option for user authentication and membership searching (435791)

Previously, LDAP used the same DN option for user authentication and membership searching. New CLI commands are introduced to `config user ldap` to resolve this issue:

- `group-member-check user-attr`
For user attribute checking, a new attribute `group-search-base` is added, which indicates the starting point for the group search. If the `group-search-base` is not set, `binddn` is used as the search base. Removed `search-type` when `group-member-check` is `user-attr`.
- `group-member-check group-object`
For group object checking, the group names in user group match rule will be picked up as the group search base. If there are multiple matching rules, each group name will trigger the `ldapsearch` query once.
- `group-member-check posix-group-object`
Changed `group-object-search-base` to `group-search-base` for `posix-group-object` `group-member-check`.

FTM Push when FAC is auth server (408273)

This feature adds support for FortiToken Mobile (FTM) push with FortiAuthenticator server in FortiOS. It also fixes a crash when adding a node to an RB tree, by checking if the same key has already been used in the tree. If yes, remove the node using the same key before adding a new node.

Non-blocking LDAP authentication (433700)

The previous LDAP authentication in `fnbamd` used `openldap` library. `OpenLDAP` supports non-blocking BIND but it is not event driven.

To support non-blocking LDAP in `fnbamd`, we stopped using the `openLDAP` library in `fnbamd`, instead using only `liblber`. Instead of using `openLDAP`, `fnbamd` will create its own event-driven connection with LDAP servers over LDAP/LDAPS/STARTTLS, make it non-blocking, do CRL checking if necessary, and compose all LDAP requests using `liblber` (including bind, unbind, search, password renewal, password query, send request and receive response, and parse response). The whole process is done in one connection.

This doesn't change any `openLDAP` implementation but moves some data structure definitions and API definitions from some internal header files to public header files.

Manual certificate SCEP renewal (423997)

Added support of manual certificate SCEP renewal besides the auto-regeneration feature that already exists.

More detailed RADIUS responses shown in connectivity test (434303)

Improved on-demand test connectivity for RADIUS servers. Test results show RADIUS server reachability, NAS client rejection, and invalid User/Password. Test also shows RADIUS Attributes returned from the RADIUS server.

Example

```
FG100D3G12807101 # diagnose test authserver radius-direct
<server_name or IP> <port no(0 default port)> <secret> <user> <password>

FG100D3G12807101 # diagnose test authserver radius-direct 1.1.1.1 0 dd
RADIUS server '1.1.1.1' status is Server unreachable

FG100D3G12807101 # diagnose test authserver radius-direct 172.18.5.28 0 dd
RADIUS server '172.18.5.28' status is Secret invalid

FG100D3G12807101 # diagnose test authserver radius-direct 172.18.5.28 0 fortinet jeff1
asdfasdf
RADIUS server '172.18.5.28' status is OK
Access-Reject

FG100D3G12807101 # diagnose test authserver radius-direct 172.18.5.28 0 fortinet ychen1
asdfasdf
RADIUS server '172.18.5.28' status is OK
Access-Accept
AVP: l=6 t=Framed-Protocol(7)
Value: 1
AVP: l=6 t=Service-Type(6)
Value: 2
AVP: l=46 t=Class(25)
Value: 9e 2a 08 6d 00 00 01 37 00 01 17 00 fe 80 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 5e fe ac 12 05
1c 01 d2 cd b6 75 a6 80 56 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 1c
AVP: l=12 t=Vendor-Specific(26) v=Microsoft(311)
VSA: l=6 t=MS-Link-Utilization-Threshold(14)
Value: 50
AVP: l=12 t=Vendor-Specific(26) v=Microsoft(311)
VSA: l=6 t=MS-Link-Drop-Time-Limit(15)
Value: 120
```

User group authentication timeout range increased to 30 days (378085)

You can now use the following command to override the default user authentication timeout for users in a user group to up to 30 days.

```
config user group
edit <group-name>
set authtimeout 43200
end
```

Where `authtimeout` is the length of the timeout in minutes. An `authtimeout` of 43200 minutes is equivalent to 30 days. Set `authtimeout` to 0 to use the default authentication timeout.

Authentication (5.6)

New authentication features added to FortiOS 5.6.

FortiToken Mobile Push (397912, 408273, 399839, 404872)

FortiToken Mobile push supports two-factor authentication without requiring users to enter a four-digit code to authenticate. Instead they can just accept the authentication request from their FortiToken Mobile app.

A new command has been added under `config system ftm-push` allowing you to configure the FortiToken Mobile Push services server IP address and port number. The Push service is provided by Apple (APNS) and Google (GCM) for iPhone and Android smartphones respectively. This will help to avoid tokens becoming locked after an already enabled two-factor authentication user has been disabled. In addition, FortiOS supports FTM Push when FortiAuthenticator is the authentication server.

CLI syntax

```
config system ftm-push
    set server-ip <ip-address>
    set server-port [1-65535] Default is 4433.
end
```

In addition, FTM Push is supported on administrator login and SSL VPN login for both iOS and Android. If an SSL VPN user authenticates with their token, then logs out and attempts to reauthenticate again within a minute, a new message will display showing "Please wait x seconds to login again." This replaces a previous error/permission denied message.

The "x" value will depend on the calculation of how much time is left in the current time step.

CLI syntax

```
config system interface
    edit <name>
        set allowaccess ftm
    next
end
```

Support V4 BIOS certificate (392960)

FortiOS now supports backwards compatibility between new BIOS version 4 and old BIOS version 3.

New BIOS V4 certificates:

- Fortinet_CA
- Fortinet_Sub_CA
- Fortinet_Factory

Old BIOS V3 certificates:

- Fortinet_CA_Backup
- Fortinet_Factory_Backup

When FortiOS connects to FortiGuard, FortiCloud, FortiManager, FortiAnalyzer, FortiSandbox as a client, the new BIOS certificate **Fortinet_Factory** will be the default client certificate. When the server returns its certificate (chain) back, FortiOS looks up the issuer of the server certificate and either keeps client certificate as is or switches to the old BIOS certificate **Fortinet_Factory_Backup**. This process occurs in one handshake.

When FortiOS connects to FortiCare, the new BIOS certificate **Fortinet_Factory** is the only client certificate and Server Name Indication (SNI) is set. There is no switchover of certificate during SSL handshake.

When FortiOS acts as a server when connected by FortiExtender, FortiSwitch, FortiAP, etc., **Fortinet_Factory** is the default server certificate. FortiOS detects SNI in client hello, and if no SNI is found or if the CN in SNI is different from the CN of **Fortinet_CA**, it switches to use the old **Fortinet_Factory_Backup**.

Support extendedKeyUsage for x.509 certificates (390393)

As per Network Device Collaborative Protection Profile (NDcPP) v1.0 requirements, server certificates used for TLS connections between FortiGate and FortiAnalyzer should have the "Server Authentication" and "Client Authentication" extendedKeyUsage fields in FIPS/CC mode.

To implement this, a new CLI command has been added under `log fortianalyzer setting` to allow you to specify the certificate used to communicate with FortiAnalyzer.

CLI syntax

```
config log fortianalyzer setting
    set certificate <name>
end
```

Administrator name added to system event log (386395)

The administrator's name now appears in the system event log when the admin issues a user quarantine ban on a source address.

Support RSA-4096 bit key-length generation (380278)

In anticipation of quantum computers, RSA-4096 bit key-length CSRs can now be imported.

New commands added to config user ldap to set UPN processing method and filter name (383561)

Added two new commands to `config user ldap` allowing you to keep or strip domain string of UPN in the token as well as the search name for this kind of UPN.

CLI syntax:

```
config user ldap
    set account-key-processing
    set account-key-name
```

end

User authentication max timeout setting change (378085)

To accommodate wireless hotspot users authenticated on the FortiGate, the user authentication max timeout setting has been extended to three days (from one day, previously).

Changes to Authentication Settings > Certificates GUI (374980)

Added new icons for certificate types and updated formatters to use these new icons.

Password for private key configurable in both GUI and CLI (374593)

FortiOS 5.4.1 introduced a feature that allowed you to export a local certificate and its private key in password protected p12, and later import them to any device. This option to set password for private key was available only in the CLI (when requesting a new certificate via SCEP or generating a CSR). This feature is now also configurable through the GUI.

The new **Password for private key** option is available under **System > Certificates** when generating a new CSR.

RADIUS password encoding (365145)

A new CLI command, under `config user radius`, has been added to allow you to configure RADIUS password encoding to use ISO-8859-1 (as per [RFC 2865](#)).

Certain RADIUS servers use ISO-8859-1 password encoding instead of others such as UTF-8. In these instances, the server will fail to authenticate the user, if the user's password is using UTF-8.

CLI syntax

```
config user radius
  edit <example>
    set password-encoding <auto | ISO-8859-1>
  end
```

This option will be skipped if the `auth-type` is neither `auto` nor `pap`.

RSSO supports Delegated-IPv6-Prefix and Framed-IPv6-Prefix (290990)

Two attributes, **Delegated-IPv6-Prefix** and **Framed-IPv6-Prefix**, have been introduced for RSSO to provide a /56 prefix for DSL customers. All devices connected from the same location (/56 per subscriber) can be mapped to the same profile without the need to create multiple /64 or smaller entries.

FortiOS Carrier (5.6.3)

New FortiOS Carrier features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

Improved CLI attribute name under 'gtp.message-filter-v0v1' (452813)

CLI "gtp.message-filter-v0v1" had an attribute "create-aa-pdp|init-pdp-ctx", which contains a vertical pipe |. The attribute name was changed to "v0-create-aa-pdp--v1-init-pdp-ctx".

Its help text is also changed to avoid the vertical bar.

Syntax

```
config gtp message-filter-v0v1
edit <name>
set ?
.....
v0-create-aa-pdp--v1-init-pdp-ctx
```

Improved GTP performance (423332)

There are independent Receive and Transmit queues for gtp-u process. These queues are and their associated resources are initialized when the ftp-enhance-mode is enabled.

CLI changes under system npu

gtp-enhance-mode

```
config system npu
set gtp-enhance-mode [enable|disable]
end
```



This configuration requires a reboot of the device to initialize the changes.

gtp-enhance-cpu-range

This is used to set the CPUs which can process the GTP-U packet inspection.

```
config system npu
set gtp-enhance-cpu-range [0|1|2]
end
```

Option	Description
0	Inspect GTPU packets by all CPUs
1	Inspect GTPU packets by Master CPUs
2	Inspect GTPU packets by Slave CPUs

New diagnose commands

```
diagnose npu np6 hbq-stats [all|np xx]
```

Used to see the GTP-U packet counter by all NP or the corresponding np.

```
diagnose npu np6 hbq-stats-clear all /np xx
```

Used to clear the GTP-U packet counter by all NP or the corresponding np.

Verifying the enhance-mode is disabled

Before execute the test or enable/disable the gtp enhance, first check the gtp-enhance-mode status as in the example below:

```
config system npu
get
gtp-enhance-mode: disable
gtp-enhance-cpu-range: 0
end
```

If the gtp-enhance-mode is disable, use the command `diagnose npu np6 hbq-stats all`.

The output will be similar to below:

```
# diagnose npu np6 hbq-stats all
Total :0
```

If the gtp-enhance-mode is enable, use the command `diagnose npu np6 hbq-stats all`

The output will be similar to below:

```
# diagnose npu np6 hbq-stats all
cpu_ 0:0
cpu_ 1:0
cpu_ 2:0
cpu_ 3:0
cpu_ 4:0
cpu_ 5:0
cpu_ 6:0
cpu_ 7:0
cpu_ 8:0
cpu_ 9:0
cpu_10:0
cpu_11:0
cpu_12:0
cpu_13:0
cpu_14:0
cpu_15:0
cpu_16:0
cpu_17:0
cpu_18:0
cpu_19:0
cpu_20:0
cpu_21:0
cpu_22:0
cpu_23:0
cpu_24:0
cpu_25:0
cpu_26:0
cpu_27:0
cpu_28:0
cpu_29:0
cpu_30:0
```

```
cpu_31:0
cpu_32:0
cpu_33:0
cpu_34:0
cpu_35:0
cpu_36:0
cpu_37:0
cpu_38:0
cpu_39:0
Total :0
```

Sometimes, when loading the new configure file, and the new configure file does not match the old configure file, the `gtp-enhance-mode` status will be confused.

You can see :

```
#config system npu
#get
gtp-enhance-mode: enable
```

but you can also see that

```
diagnose npu np6 hbq-stats all
Total :0
```

This means the `gtp-enhance-mode` is actually set to `disable`.

The inverse is also possible, when you see

```
#config system npu
#get
gtp-enhance-mode: disable
```

but you also see that

```
# diagnose npu np6 hbq-stats all
cpu_ 0:0
...
cpu_39:0
Total :0
```

This means the `gtp-enhance-mode` is actually set to `enable`.

If these combinations occur, just run the command below:

```
config system npu
  set gtp-enhance-mode enable
end
```

or

```
config system npu
  set gtp-enhance-mode disable
end
```

Once this is done, reboot the device to let the 2 statuses match.

FortiOS Carrier (5.6.1)

New FortiOS Carrier features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

GTP enhancement and GTP Performance Improvement. (423332)

The GTP changes in 5.6.1 take place in the following categories:

New GTP features and functionality enhancements.

- GTP message filter enhancements, including:
 - Unknown message white list
 - GTPv1 and GTPv2 profile separation
 - Message adoption.
- GTP IE white list.
- Global APN rate limit, including:
 - sending back REJECT message with back-off timer
 - "APN congestion" cause value
- GTP half-open, half-close configurable timer.

GTP performance improvements.

- Implemented RCU on GTP-U running path. i.e, no locking needed to look up tunnel state when processing GTP-U.
Note the RCU is only applied on GTPv1 and GTPv2 tunnels. It is not used for GTPv0 tunnels, due to the fact that (1) GTPv0 traffic is relatively minor compared with GTPv1 and GTPv2, and (2) GTPv0 tunnel indexing is totally different from GTPv1 and GTPv2. GTPv0 tunnel is indexed by [IMSI, NSAPI]. GTPv1 and GTPv2 tunnel is indexed by [IP, TEID]
- Localized CPU memory usage on GTP-U running path.
- GTP-C: changed some GTP tables from RB tree to hash table, including
 - GTP request tables, and GTPv0 tunnel tables.
 - Testing showed, when handling millions of entries adding/deleting, hash table performance was much better.
 - 2.3.2 Hash table is compatible with RCU API, so we can apply RCU on these GTP-C tables later for further performance improvements.
- GTP-C, improved GTP path management logic, so that GTP path will time out sooner when there are no tunnels linked to it

CLI Changes:

New Diagnose commands:

```
diagnose firewall gtp
```

Option	Description
hash-stat-tunnel	GTP tunnel hash statistics.
hash-stat-v0tunnel	GTPv0 tunnel hash statistics.
hash-stat-path	GTP path hash statistics.
hash-stat-req	GTP request hash statistics.
vd-apn-shaper	APN shaper on VDOM level.
ie-white-list-v0v1	IE white list for GTPv0 or v1.
ie-white-list-v2	IE white list for GTPv2.

```
diagnose firewall gtp vd-apn-shaper
```

Option	Description
list	List

```
diagnose firewall gtp ie-white-list-v0v1
```

Option	Description
list	List

```
diagnose firewall gtp ie-white-list-v2
```

Option	Description
list	List

```
config gtp apn-shaperapn-shaper
```

Option	Description
apn	APN to match. Leave empty to match ANY. "apn" field can be empty, it matches ANY apn. when configured, it is used to set a limit for any apn which is not explicitly listed; Also, if configured, such an entry should be the last entry, as it is first-match rule.
rate-limit	Rate limit in packets/s (0 - 1000000, 0 means unlimited).

Option	Description
action	Action. [drop reject] There is no back-off timer in GTPv0, therefor the <code>reject</code> action is not available for V0
back-off-time	Back off time in seconds (10 - 360). <code>back-off-time</code> visible when action is "reject"

Changed commands:

Under command `firewall gtp`, `config message-filter` is replaced by `set message-filter-v0v1`

Example:

```
config firewall gtp
edit <name>
set message-filter-v0v1
```

New fields have been added to the `config firewall gtp` command context

Option	Description
half-open-timeout	Half-open tunnel timeout (in seconds).
half-close-timeout	Half-close tunnel timeout (in seconds).

Example:

```
config firewall gtp
edit <name>
set half-open-timeout 10
set half-close-timeout 10
```

Models affected by change

- FortiGate 3700D
- FortiGate 3700DX
- FortiGate 3800D

Device identification (5.6)

New Device Identification features added to FortiOS 5.6.

Changed default for device-identification-active-scan to disabled (380837)

It was decided that most customers would not appreciate a default setting that resulted in the FortiGate probing their systems, so active scan option is changed to disabled by default going forward, but upgrade code is added to keep the option enabled for those upgrading from 5.4.0 or 5.4.1 who were using device-identification with active scan enabled.

Diagnose command changes (5.6.1)

New diagnose features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

crash dump improvement on i386/X86_64 (396580)

The output from the WPAD crash dump can now be in binary format as well as hexadecimal. The two commands are:

1. For dump in binary format

```
diagnose debug app wpad-dump <debug_level>
```

2. For dump in hexadecimal format

```
diagnose debug app wpad-crash-hexdump <debug_level>
```

LLDP diagnose commands easier to execute (413102)

While there is no change to the syntax of the commands, the LLDP diagnose commands are allowed to execute without switchid/portid parameters configured.

New command to monitor IPS stats (414496)

When WAD IPS scanning took place with a failed result, the message caused the IPS sensor to mistakenly record the event as something triggering the sensor. To correct this, a new command was created.

Command:

```
diagnose wad stats ips [list | clear ]
```

list	List IPS statistics
clear	Clear IPS statistics

Example

```
diagnose wad stats ips list
IPS status
unix stream counter = 0
active sess counter = 0
ips provider counter = 0
not running failure = 0
all busy failure = 0
conn close counter = 0
conn connected counter = 0
conn failure = 0
zero len failure = 0
```



```
suspended failure = 0
push failure = 0
block write counter = 0
un-block write counter = 0
un-matching failure = 0
ips action failure = 0
ips action permit = 0
ips action deny = 0
ips action bypass = 0
```

Additional information in FortiGate 30E model diagnose command (422266)

Due to additional modem features being merged into the FortiGate 30E firmware, there is more status information displayed when using the `diagnose sys lte-modem` command. There are also additional related MIB options.

New diagnose sys fips kat-error options (440186)

The command `diagnose sys fips kat-error` has added additional options, like ECDSA.

Diagnose command changes (5.6)

New diagnose features added to FortiOS 5.6.

Add missing "diag npu np6 ..." Commands (305808)

The following `diag npc np6` commands have been reintroduced into 5.6.0.

These options were available in 5.2.x but were not in 5.4.0

- `diag npc np6 gmac-stats` - Shows the GMAC MIBs counters
- `diag npc np6 gmac-stats-clear` - Clears the GMAC MIBS counters
- `diag npc np6 gige-port-stats` - Shows the GIGE PORT MIBs counters
- `diag npc np6 gige-port-stats-clear` - Clears the GIGE PORT MIBs counters

Diagnose command to show firewall service cache (355819)

A diagnostic command has been added to dump out the service name cache kept by the `miglogd` daemon for each individual VDOM.

```
diag test app miglogd 106
```

Example output:

This output has been edited down to conserve space. Only the first 5 of each grouping has been included.

```
diag test app miglogd 106
tcp
port(0), name(NONE)
port(21), name(FTP)
```

```

port(22), name(SSH)
port(23), name(TELNET)
port(25), name(SMTP)
udp
port(53), name(DNS)
port(67--68), name(DHCP)
port(69), name(TFTP)
port(88), name(KERBEROS)
port(111), name(ONC-RPC) extra: (ONC-RPC) (NFS)
icmp
port(1), name(test)
port(8), name(PING)
port(13), name(TIMESTAMP)
port(15), name(INFO_REQUEST)
port(17), name(INFO_ADDRESS)
general
prot(6), port(4300), name(example.com_Webadmin)
prot(6), port(5060), name(SIP)
prot(6), port(5190--5194), name(AOL)
prot(6), port(5631), name(PC-Anywhere)
prot(6), port(5900), name(VNC)
service names:
WINFRAME, DNS, DCE-RPC, H323, RLOGIN, IRC, UUCP, example.com_Webadmin, HTTPS, WAIS, FINGER, REXEC,
RAUDIO, SNMP, TIMESTAMP, RADIUS-OLD, DHCP, AOL, MGCP, SMTPS, INFO_REQUEST, HTTP, SCCP, SOCKS, PPTP,
ONC-RPC, NNTP, SMTP, QUAKE, PC-Anywhere, TFTP, NONE, SSH, RSH, IMAPS, LDAP_UDP, SIP, RIP, PING, PING6,
X-WINDOWS, SMB, SAMBA, TRACEROUTE, NFS, WINS, L2TP, IMAP, GOPHER, SIP-MSNmessenger, SYSLOG, DHCP6,
TELNET, LDAP, MS-SQL, MMS, KERBEROS, SQUID, NTP, FTP, CVSPSERVER, test, AFS3, POP3, Internet-Locator-
Service,
service groups:
Email Access (DNS, IMAP, IMAPS, POP3, POP3S, SMTP, SMTPS, )
Windows AD (DCE-RPC, DNS, KERBEROS, LDAP, LDAP_UDP, SAMBA, SMB, )
Web Access (DNS, HTTP, HTTPS, )
Exchange Server (DCE-RPC, DNS, HTTPS, )
policies involving multiple service definitions:

```

Diagnose command to show crash history and adjust crash interval (366691)

In order to alleviate the impact logging put on resources if processes repeatedly crash, limits have been put on crash logs.

- The default limit is 10 times per 60 minutes for crash logs. This limit can be edited using the command:

```
diagnose debug crashlog interval <interval>
```

<interval> is the number of second to log crash logs for a particular process

- The `miglogd` daemon is the only one to write crash logs directly. Crash logs from other processes are done through `miglogd`.
- Crash logs for a single crash are written all at once so that the logs are easier to read if there are crashes of multiple processes at the same time.
- A `diagnose` command has been added to show crash history.

```

# diagnose debug crashlog history
# Crash log interval is 3600 seconds
# reportd crashed 2 times. The latest crash was at 2016-12-01 17:53:45

```

diagnose switch-controller commands (368197)

The following diagnose commands in the CLI, are designed to

- Output stats on the managed switches
- Kick the client from the managed switches

```
diagnose switch-controller dump lldp neighbors-summary <device-id> <portid>
```

```
diagnose switch-controller dump lldp neighbors-detail <device-id> <portid>
```

```
diagnose switch-controller dump lldp Stats <device-id>
```

```
diagnose switch-controller dump port-stats <device-id>
```

```
diagnose switch-controller dump trunk-state <device-id>
```

```
diagnose switch-controller kick <device-id> <vlan ID> <port ID> <MAC ID>
```

While not a diagnostic command, the following can also be run from VDOMs

```
execute replace-device fortiswitch <device-id>
```

These commands are now longer restricted to being run from the root VLAN and can be run from any VDOM

Diagnose commands for monitoring NAT sessions (376546)

We have developed the following monitoring capabilities in CLI and SNMP.

- NAT sessions per IP pool
- Total tcp sessions per IP pool
- Total udp sessions per IP pool
- Total others (non-tcp and non-udp) sessions per IP pool

FortiGate supports 4 types of NAT, which are

- Overload
- One-to-one
- Fixed-port-range
- Port-block-allocation.

diagnose firewall ippool-all

- list - lists all of the IP Pools
- stats - Statistics of the IP Pools

list

```
diagnose firewall ippool-all list
```

Example output:

```
vdom:root owns 4 ippool(s)
```

```
name:Client-IPPool
type:port-block-allocation
nat-ip-range:10.23.75.5-10.23.75.200
name:Fixed Port Range
type:fixed-port-range
nat-ip-range:20.20.20.5-20.20.20.50
name:One to One
type:one-to-one
nat-ip-range:10.10.10.5-10.10.10.50
name:Sales_Team
type:overload
nat-ip-range:10.23.56.18-10.23.56.20
```

Stats

This option has two methods of being used. By just hitting enter after stats, the output contains the stats for all of the IP Pools. By putting the name of an IP Pool after stats, the output is filtered so that only stats relating to that particular IP Pool is included in the output.

Example output #1

```
# diagnose firewall ippool-all stats
vdom:root owns 5 ippool(s)
name: Client-IPPool
type: port-block-allocation
startip: 10.23.75.5
endip: 10.23.75.200
total ses: 0
tcp ses: 0
udp ses: 0
other ses: 0
name: Fixed Port Range
type: fixed-port-range
startip: 20.20.20.5
endip: 20.20.20.50
total ses: 0
tcp ses: 0
udp ses: 0
other ses: 0
name: One to One
type: one-to-one
startip: 10.10.10.5
endip: 10.10.10.50
total ses: 0
tcp ses: 0
udp ses: 0
other ses: 0
name: Sales_Team
type: overload
startip: 10.23.56.18
endip: 10.23.56.20
total ses: 0
tcp ses: 0
udp ses: 0
other ses: 0
```

Example #2

```
# diagnose firewall ippool-all stats "Sales_Team"
name: Sales_Team
type: overload
startip: 10.23.56.18
endip: 10.23.56.20
total ses: 0
tcp ses: 0
udp ses: 0
other ses: 0
```

SIP diagnose command improvements (376853)

A diagnose command has been added to the CLI that outputs VDOM data located in the voipd daemon.

```
diagnose sys sip-proxy vdom
```

Example

```
(global) # diagnose sys sip-proxy vdom
VDOM list by id:
vdom 0 root (Kernel: root)
vdom 1 dmngmt-vdom (Kernel: dmngmt-vdom)
vdom 2 test2 (Kernel: test2)
vdom 3 test3 (Kernel: test3)
vdom 4 vdoma2 (Kernel: vdoma2)
vdom 5 vdomb2 (Kernel: vdomb2)
vdom 6 vdomc2 (Kernel: vdomc2)
vdom 7 vdoma (Kernel: vdoma)
vdom 8 vdomb (Kernel: vdomb)
vdom 9 vdomc (Kernel: vdomc)
VDOM list by name:
vdom 1 dmngmt-vdom (Kernel: dmngmt-vdom)
vdom 0 root (Kernel: root)
vdom 2 test2 (Kernel: test2)
vdom 3 test3 (Kernel: test3)
vdom 7 vdoma (Kernel: vdoma)
vdom 4 vdoma2 (Kernel: vdoma2)
vdom 8 vdomb (Kernel: vdomb)
vdom 5 vdomb2 (Kernel: vdomb2)
vdom 9 vdomc (Kernel: vdomc)
vdom 6 vdomc2 (Kernel: vdomc2)
```

Diagnose command to get AV virus statistics (378870)

A new diagnostic command has been added for the showing of AV statistics. This can be used within each VDOM

Syntax:

```
diagnose ips av stats show
```

Example output

```
diagnose ips av stats show
```

```

AV stats:
HTTP virus detected: 0
HTTP virus blocked: 0
SMTP virus detected: 0
SMTP virus blocked: 0
POP3 virus detected: 0
POP3 virus blocked: 0
IMAP virus detected: 0
IMAP virus blocked: 0
NNTP virus detected: 0
NNTP virus blocked: 0
FTP virus detected: 0
FTP virus blocked: 0
SMB virus detected: 0
SMB virus blocked: 0

```

Diagnose command to get remote FortiSwitch trunk information (379329)

To ensure that a FortiGate and its managed FortiSwitches stay in synchronization in the event of an inadvertent trunk table change situation, there is a new CLI setting that checks for discrepancies.

The idea is to check to see if there will be a synchronization issue between the FortiGate and the FortiSwitch before applying the configuration

1. On fortilink reconnection, FGT reads trunk table of FSW using REST API GET-- Hence FGT gets all the port and its trunk membership information from FSW
2. FGT then compares its managed FSW trunk information with received FSW information
3. If there is any conflict, FGT will delete extra/conflicted trunk on FSW using REST API POST
4. At the end FGT replays all configuration to FSW as usual

This will help delete the extra trunks, conflicted trunks on the FSW and to make sure in sync

Possible reasons for losing synchronization include:

- The FortiGate reboots after a factory reset while there is still a trunk configuration in the FortiSwitch.
- The managed FortiSwitch's trunk table gets edited on the FortiGate while the FortiSwitch is offline.
- A trunk table on the FortiSwitch gets added or the existing one gets modified or deleted by a user.

New diagnose command for the CLI:

```
diagnose switch-controller dump trunk-switch-config <Managed FortiSwitch device ID>
```

help provided for diagnose debug application csfd (379675)

The syntax for the command is:

```
diagnose debug application csfd <Integer>
```

The <Integer> being the debug level. To get the integer value for the debug level, run the command without the integer. You will get the following:

```

# diagnose debug application csfd
csfd debug level is 0 (0x0)
Error 0x01
Warning 0x02
Function trace 0x04
Information 0x08

```

```

Detail 0x10
MAC packet encryption debug 0x20
MAC learning debug 0x40
FAZ configuration synchronize debugging 0x0080
FAZ configuration function trace 0x00100
Configuration tree update debug 0x00200
Configuration tree function trace 0x00400
HA Sync plugin debug 0x00800

```

Convert the value next to the debug level you want to an integer. For example, to set the debug level to Information, convert 0x08 to 8 and use it for the option at the end of the command.

```
# diagnose debug application csfd 8
```

New IPS engine diagnose commands (381371)

Periodically, when troubleshooting, an different IPS engine will need to be installed on the FortiGate but there will also be a restriction that the FortiGate can't be rebooted. Normally, a new IPS engine will not be fully recognized by the system until after a reboot. This command allows the running of new commands or new versions of commands in the IPS engine without having to reboot the FortiGate.

```
diagnose ips test cmd <command strings>
```

The command strings are separated by a semicolon such as:

```
diagnose ips test cmd command1;command2;command3
```

Examples:

- `diagnose ips test cmd "ips session status"`

This command triggers the diagnosis command in the double quotation marks: "diagnose ips session status"

- `diag ips test cmd "ips memory track; ips memory status; ips session status"`

This command triggers the diagnosis commands in the double quotation marks in order.

The results:

```

Commands[0]: ips memory track
----< execute "diagnose ips memory track" >----
Commands[1]: ips memory status
----< execute "diagnose ips memory status" >----
Commands[2]: ips session status
----< execute "diagnose ips session status" >----

```

New AV engine diagnose commands (383352)

The purpose of this diagnostic command is to display information from within the AV engine for the purposes of aiding trouble shooting and diagnostics if the AV engine crashes or times out.

The command is:

```
diagnose antivirus test
```

It's syntax can be one of the following:

```
diagnose antivirus test <command>
diagnose antivirus test <command argument1>; <argument2>; ...
```

The command is defined and interpreted by the AV engine. FortiOS just passes the CLI command into the AV engine and outputs the strings returned by AV engine.

In AV engine 5.4.239, the following command are supported.

- `get scantypes`
- `set scantypes`
- `debug`

NPU diagnose command now included HPE info in results (384692)

There is no change to the CLI but the results of the `diagnose npu np6 npu-feature` command now include results regarding HPE.

clear checksum log files (diag sys ha checksum log clear) (385905)

There is currently a command, `diag sys ha checksum log [enable | disable]` that enables a checksum debug log by saving checksum calculations to a temp file. However, the checksum calculations saved in this file can be processed by two different functions, `cmdbsvr` and the CLI.

The function `cmf_context-is-server()` now enables the determining whether the running process is `cmdbsvr` or the CLI and also a diagnose command has been added to clear the contents of the file.

```
diag sys ha checksum log clear
```

new diagnose command to delete avatars (388634)

It is now possible to delete avatars associated with FortiClient clients.

```
diagnose endpoint avatar delete <FortiClient UID>
```

or

```
diagnose endpoint avatar delete <FortiClient UID> <username>
```

- If only the FortiClient UID is used, all of the avatars, except those that are currently being used will be deleted.
- If both the FortiClient UID and the username are used, all of the avatars that belong to that combination, except those being used, will be deleted.

CID signatures have been improved for DHCP and CDP (389350, 409436)

More parameters have been added to make them more specific. This helps to reduce false positives.

- DHCP signatures:
 - A new dhcp signature file has been added 'cid.dhcp2' that allows for the class and host name to be specified in the same signature. This is for increased accuracy.
 - Relevant signatures from 'cid.dhcp' have been ported to the new signature file 'cid.dhcp2'
 - Support DHCP parameter matching in signatures.

- Support DHCP option list matching in signatures.
- CDP mac analyzer now passes all three keys to the OS matcher.
- Tests:
 - A number of new tests (including pcaps) have been added to match existing signatures and new signatures.
 - Some tests where multiple protocols were present in a single pcap, have been modified. These are now split into multiple pcaps, each containing a single protocol. This allows FortiOS to fully test a signature, where previously a single test may have matched multiple signatures.
- CID debug statistics now use shared memory. This prevents the daemon from having to respond to CLI requests and allows for the stats to persist across daemon restarts.
 - A Change has been made to the host ip update priority. IP changes for routers that have had their type set by heuristic are not allowed to change IPs.
 - If it is a Fortinet device, the change is allowed if it comes through a protocol we trust more (CDP, DHCP, LLDP, or MAC).

diagnose command to calculate socket memory usage (392655)

This diagnostic command gives the socket memory usage by individual process.

```
diagnose sys process sock-mem <pid>; <pid> ...
```

Separate arguments with a semicolon ";"

Example

Run diagnose sys top to get the pid of a few process...

```
diagnose sys top
Run Time: 1 days, 0 hours and 44 minutes
OU, ON, OS, 100I, OWA, OHI, OSI, OST; 7996T, 5839F
httpd 214 S 0.1 0.2
httpd 1398 S 0.1 0.2
snmpd 173 S 0.1 0.1
```

Then use those pid with the command...

```
diagnose sys process sock-mem 214; 173
Process ID=214, sock_mem=0 (bytes)
Process ID=173, sock_mem=2 (bytes)
```

FortiGuard can determine a FortiGate's location from its public IP address (393972)

The FortiGate now shows the public IP address and the geographical location (country) in the dashboard. The FortiGate sends a ping to the FortiCare/FortiGuard network and as a response receives the local WAN IP, or if it is being NATed the public IP of the network. Using the public IP address a geo-ip Blackpool is done to determine the country.

In the same location on the Dashboard, it also shows whether or not the listed IP address is a member of the Fortinet Blacklist.

CLI

The diagnostic command to get the information is:

```
diag sys waninfo
```

Example:

```
diagnose sys waninfo
Public/WAN IP: 209.87.240.98
Location:
Latitude: 45.250100
Longitude: -75.916100
Accuracy radius: 5
Time zone: America/Toronto
City: Stittsville
Subdivisions:
0: Ontario
Country: Canada
Postal:
Code: K2S
Continent: North America
Registered country: Canada
ISP: Unknown

Failed to query whether 209.87.240.98 is in the FortiGuard IP Blacklist: ret=-1 buf_
sz=1024
Command fail. Return code 5
```

To get information about the address's inclusion as a member of the Fortinet Blacklist, the command is:

```
diag fortiguard ipblacklist [db | vr | ip | ctx]
```

- db - Get Database and Vendor/Reason List Versions.
- vr - Get Vendor/Reason List.
- ip - Get Information on Specific IP.
- ctx - Show Local Context.

If using the ip option, specify the IPv4 address after the ip option.

Example:

```
diagnose fortiguard ipblacklist ip 209.87.240.98
```

AWS bootstrapping diagnose commands (394158)

Bootstrap feature is quite similar to cloudinit in Openstack. When user launching a new instance of FGT-VM in AWS, it needs to provide some basic information of license and config stored in AWS s3 bucket via userdata. Bootstrap will download license and config from s3 bucket and apply them to FGT automatically.

CLI

Add a new cli to show the results of bootstrap config apply.

Example:

```
diagnose debug aws-bootstrap show
>> FGVM040000066475 $ config sys glo
>> FGVM040000066475 (global) $ set hostname awsondemand
>> FGVM040000066475 (global) $ end
```

Diagnose command to aid in conserve mode issues (394856)

The `diagnose hardware sys conserve` command provides memory information about the system that is useful in diagnosing conserve mode issues.

Example

```
diagnose hardware sys conserve
memory conserve mode: off
total RAM: 7996 MB
memory used: 2040 MB 25% of total RAM
memory used threshold extreme: 7597 MB 95% of total RAM
memory used threshold red: 7037 MB 88% of total RAM
memory used threshold green: 6557 MB 82% of total RAM
```

Diagnose commands to display FortiCare registration information (395254)

The Dashboard License widget can display information about the registered company owner and industry. There are some diagnostic commands that can do that in the CLI.

```
diagnose forticare protocol [HTTP | HTTPS]
diagnose forticare server < server IP>
diagnose forticare cnreg-code-list - List of known ISO 3166-1 numeric country/region
codes.
diagnose forticare direct-registration reseller-list <cnreg-code>
diagnose forticare direct-registration country-data <cnreg-code>
diagnose forticare direct-registration organization-list
diagnose forticare direct-registration product-registration <arguments>
```

Options/arguments for product registration:

- a = account_id
- A = address
- y = city
- C = company
- c = contract_number
- T = country_code
- e = existing_account
- F = fax
- f = first_name
- h = help
- I = industry

- i = industry_id
- l = last_name
- O = orgsize
- o = orgsize_id
- p = password
- P = phone
- z = postal_code
- R = reseller
- r = reseller_id
- S = state
- s = state_code
- t = title
- v = version

new diag test app csfd options (395302)

Two additional test levels have been added to the `diag test app csfd` command in order to dump some additional information about timers, file handlers status and received MAC addresses to the HA master.

```
diag test app csfd 11
diag test app csfd 40
```

new 'AND' and 'OR' filter capabilities for debug flow addr (398985)

In order to make a more flexible filter for the debug flow address command, the Boolean arguments of 'AND' and 'OR' have been added to the command parser. This will work regardless of whether or not the source or destination address is being filtered.

Syntax:

```
diagnose debug flow filter address <IP1|from IP> <IP2|to IP> <ENTER|and/or>
```

Improve wad debug trace and crash log information (400454)

Previously, when filtering on a wad debug trace or crash log information, the information may not have been as targeted as necessary. A new setting has been added to target a specific policy.

```
diagnose wad filter firewall-policy <index>
diagnose wad filter explicit-policy <index>
```

These commands will target the firewall or explicit proxy policies. Using a "-1" as the value will index of that particular policy type.

diagnose hardware test added to additional models (403571)

The diagnose hardware test that was previously on FortiGate E Series models, and the FortiGate 300/500D models, has been expanded to include:

- Multiple low range models
- Multiple mid range models

- FortiGate 3800D model

This diagnostic feature replaces much of the functionality of the HQIP test that requires the installation of a separate firmware image.

diag sys sip-proxy config profile --> diag sys sip-proxy config profiles (404874)

Diagnose command has been changed to make it more consistent with other similar commands.

```
diagnose sys sip-proxy config profile
```

has been changed to

```
diagnose sys sip-proxy config profiles
```

diag debug flow changes (405348)

For crash and console logs, the logs are no longer parsed before being sent to their destination. Now they are dumped directly to the destination.

In addition the following options have been removed from the diagnose command list:

```
diag debug flow show console
diag debug flow show console enable
diag debug flow show console disable
```

improve wad memory diagnose process (408236)

The WAD SSL memory dump functions have been moved to migbase so they can be shared by both WAD and CLI.

CLI additions

- `diagnose wad memory` - WAD memory diagnostics
- `diagnose wad memory general` - List of WAD memory blocks.
- `diagnose wad memory bucket` List suspicious WAD memory buckets.
- `diagnose wad memory ssl` List SSL memory statistics

New daemon watchdog framework in forticron (409243)

A new feature has been added to dump userspace's process stacks.

CLI additions:

```
diagnose sys process pstack <pid>
```

<pid> - Process ID, such as those displayed when using `diagnose sys top`

Output from diagnose wad debug command filterable(410069)

The output from the command was so verbose that there was some concern that the information that was being looked for could get lost in all of the extraneous data so some parameters were added that allow the information

to be filtered by both severity level and the category of the information.

The command has a few settings

```
diagnose wad debug [enable|disable|show|clear|display]
```

- `enable` - Enable the level or category debug setting.
- `disable` - Disable debug setting.
- `show` - Show the current debug setting.
- `clear` - Clear the exiting debug setting.
- `display` - Changes to the Display setting.
 - `diag wad debug display pid enable` - enables the display of PID values in the output.

Syntax to set the level

```
diagnose wad debug enable level <level>
```

Where the `<level>` is one of:

- `error` - error
- `warn` - warning
- `info` - information
- `verbose` - verbose

Syntax to set the category

```
diag wad debug enable category <category>
```

Where `<category>` is one of the following:

- `connection` - connection
- `session` - session
- `protocol` - protocol
- `io` - I/O
- `packet` - packet
- `db` - cache database
- `cifs` - CIFS
- `ssl` - SSL
- `webcache` - webcache
- `policy` - policy matching
- `auth` - authentication
- `scan` - UTM scan
- `cache` - wanopt cache
- `tunnel` - wanopt tunnel
- `bank` - bank
- `stats` - stats
- `disk` - cache disk
- `video` - cache video

- `rplmsg` - replacement message
- `ipc` - IPC
- `bar` - Fortinet top bar
- `waf` - WAF
- `memblk` - memory block
- `all` - all category

DNS log improvements (410132)

DNS logs have been improved to make the presentation of the data clearer. These changes involve a reorganization of the DNS log subtypes.

These changes include:

- Change `dns-subtype` to `dns-response`
- Remove `status` field and add Pass/Block/Redirect to `action` field
- Change the `msg` field display DNS filter rating results
- All error messages now to the `error` field
- Change `urlfilteridx` to `domainfilteridx`
- Change `urlfilterlist` to `domainfilterlist`
- Add a query type value field.

Explicit web proxy (5.6)

New explicit web proxy features added to FortiOS 5.6.

Explicit proxy supports multiple incoming ports and port ranges (402775, 398687)

Explicit proxy can now be configured to listen on multiple ports on the same IP as well as listen for HTTP and HTTPS on those same (or different) ports.

Define the IP ranges using a hyphen (-). As shown below, `port_high` is not necessary to specify if `port_low` is equal to `port_high`.

CLI syntax

```
config web-proxy explicit
  set http-incoming-port <port_low> [-<port_high>]
end
```

Explicit proxy supports IP pools (402221)

Added a new command, `poolname`, to `config firewall proxy-policy`. When setting the IP pool name with this command, the outgoing IP will be selected.

CLI syntax

```
config firewall proxy-policy
  edit <example>
    set poolname <name>
  end
```

Option to remove unsupported encoding from HTTP headers (392908)

Added a new command to `config web-proxy profile` that, when enabled, allows the FortiGate to strip out unsupported encoding from request headers, and correctly block banned words. This is to resolve issues when attempting to successfully block content using Google Chrome.

CLI syntax:

```
config web-proxy profile
  edit <example>
    set strip-encoding {enable | disable}
  end
```

New authentication process for explicit web proxying (386474, 404355)

While in Proxy inspection mode, explicit proxy options can be set under **Network > Explicit Proxy**. These settings will affect what options are available for creating proxy policies under **Policy & Objects > Proxy Policy**. From here you may create new policies with **Proxy Type** set to either **Explicit Web**, **Transparent Web**, or **FTP**.

Authentication will be triggered differently when configuring a transparent HTTP policy. Before such a policy can be configured, you must enable **HTTP Policy Redirect** under **Security Profiles > Proxy Options**.

Added Internet services to explicit proxy policies (386182)

Added two new commands to `config firewall proxy-policy`. FortiOS can use the Internet Service Database (introduced in 5.4.1) as the web-proxy policy matching factor.

CLI syntax:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
  edit <example>
    set internet-service <application-id>
    set internet-service-custom <application-name>
```

Virtual WAN link in an explicit proxy firewall policy (385849, 396780)

Virtual WAN link (VWL) interfaces may now be set as the destination interface in an explicit proxy policy, routing traffic properly using basic virtual WAN link load balance settings. This is now configurable through both the CLI under `firewall proxy-policy` and the GUI.

Added application ID and category setting on the explicit proxy enabled service (379330)

This feature introduces support for application ID/category in the service of explicit proxy as one policy selection factor. The intent is to identify the application type based on the HTTP request with IPS application type detection function. It is similar to the current firewall explicit address, but it is implemented as a service type, and you can select the application ID/ category to define explicit service. Of course, now it must be an HTTP-based application.

CLI syntax

```
config firewall service custom
  edit "name"
    set app-service-type [disable|app-id|app-category]
  next
end
```

Explicit Proxy - populate pac-file-url in transparent mode (373977)

You can now use `manageip` to populate `pac-file-url` in transparent `opmode`. Previously, in the CLI, when displaying `pac-file-url`, the code only tries to get interface IP to populate `pac-file-url`.

CLI syntax

```
config vdom
  edit root
    config system settings
      set opmode transparent
      set manageip 192.168.0.34/24
    end
    config web-proxy explicit
      set pac-file-server-status enable
      get pac-file-url [url.pac]
```

```
end
```

SSL deep inspection OCSP support for Explicit Proxy (365843)

OCSP support for SSL deep inspection added for Explicit Proxy.

CLI syntax

```
config vpn certificate setting
  set ssl-ocsp-status [enable|disable]
  set ssl-ocsp-option [certificate|server]
end
```

Timed out authentication requests are now logged (357098)

CLI syntax

```
config web-proxy explicit
  set trace-auth-no-rsp [enable|disable]
end
```

Firewall (5.6.3)

New firewall features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

Multi-port support for Explicit Proxy (402775)

Support has been added for the use of multiple ports and port range in the explicit FTP or Web proxies. These changes have been added in both CLI and GUI.

CLI changes:

```
set http-incoming-port <port_low>[-<port_high>]
```

Where:

- `port_low` - the low value of the port
- `port_high` - the high value of the port

The `port_high` value can be omitted if `port_low` and `port_high` are the same.

Nturbo support CAPWAP traffic and fix IPsec IPv6 firewall policy code typo (290708) (423323)

NTurbo is used for IPSEC+IPS case. The IPSEC SA info is passed to NTURBO as part of VTAG for control packet and will be used for the xmit.



If the packets need to go through IPSEC interface, the traffic will be always offloaded to Nturbo. But for the case that SA has not been installed to NP6 because of hardware limitation or SA offload disable, the packets will be sent out through raw socket by IPS instead of Nturbo, since the software encryption is needed in this case.

CLI Changes:

Previously, NTurbo could only be enabled or disabled globally. The setting of `np-acceleration` has been added to the firewall policy context instead of just the global context.

Add: Added a CLI command in the firewall policy to enable/disable NTurbo acceleration.

```
config firewall policy
edit 1
set np-acceleration [enable|disable]
end
```

When IPS is enabled for VPN IPsec traffic, the data can be accelerated by NTurbo now.

Toggling SNAT in Central SNAT policies (434981)

The central NAT feature is not enabled by default. When `central-nat` is enabled, `nat` option under IPv4 policies is skipped and SNAT must be done via `central-snat-map`.

- Info messages and redirection links have been added to IPv4 policy list and dialog to indicate the above
- If NGFW mode is policy-based, then it is assumed that central-nat (specifically SNAT) is enabled implicitly
- The option to toggle NAT in central-snat-map policies has been added (previously it was only shown in NGFW policy-based mode).
- In central-snat policy dialog, the port-mapping fields for the original port have been updated to accept ranges.
- Nat will be skipped in firewall policy if per vdom central nat is enabled.

Example scenarios to show changes in how CLI treats central-nat

Change: make nat available regardless of NGFW mode.

```
config firewall central-snat-map
edit 1
    set orig-addr "192-86-1-86"
    set srcintf "port23"
    set dst-addr "192-96-1-96"
    set dstintf "port22"
    set nat-ippool "pool1"
    set protocol 17
    set orig-port 2896-2897
    set nat enable
end
```

Change: hide nat-port if nat-ippool is not set or NAT is disabled.

```
config firewall central-snat-map
edit 1
    set orig-addr "192-86-1-86"
    set srcintf "port23"
    set dst-addr "192-96-1-96"
    set dstintf "port22"
    set nat-ippool "pool1"
    set protocol 17
    set orig-port 2896-2897
    set nat disable
end
```

Change:change orig-port to accept range

```
config firewall central-snat-map
edit 1
    set orig-addr "192-86-1-86"
    set srcintf "port23"
    set dst-addr "192-96-1-96"
    set dstintf "port22"
    set nat-ippool "pool1"
    set protocol 17
    set orig-port 2896-2897 (help text changed to: Original port or port range).
    set nat-port 35804-35805
end
```

Improved wildcard support for firewall fqdn (444646)

The following wildcard character instances are now supported in wildcard FQDN addresses:

- "?" character
- "*" character in the middle of a phrase
- The "?*" combination

Policy Matching based on Referrer Headers and Query Strings (446257)

Web proxy policies support creating web proxy addresses to match referrer headers and query strings.

Matching referrer headers

For example, to create a web proxy address to match the referrer header to block access to the following YouTube URL `http://youtube.com/user/test321`. The http request will have the following format:

```
GET /user/test321 HTTP/1.1
Host: www.youtube.com
User-Agent: curl/7.52.1
Accept: */*
```

Create the following web proxy addresses to match this page:

```
config firewall proxy-address
edit youtube
set type host-regex
set host-regex ".*youtube.com"
next
edit test321
set host "youtube"
set path "/user/test321"
set referrer enable
end
```

Then create two proxy policies, one that allows access to all traffic and a second one that blocks access to the page that matches the referrer header:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
edit 1
set uuid 92273e4e-8c53-51e7-a7bd-f26e6e15fc98
set proxy explicit-web
set dstintf "wan2"
set srcaddr "all"
set dstaddr "all"
set service "webproxy-connect"
set action accept
set schedule "always"
set utm-status enable
set profile-protocol-options "test"
set ssl-ssh-profile "test"
next
edit 2
set uuid d35ad06a-8c53-51e7-8511-17200f682a4a
set proxy explicit-web
set dstintf "wan2"
set srcaddr "all"
set dstaddr "test321"
set service "webproxy"
set action accept
set schedule "always"
```

```

set utm-status enable
set av-profile "default"
set profile-protocol-options "test"
set ssl-ssh-profile "test"
end

```

Matching query strings

To match the video with URL `youtube.com/watch?v=XXXXXXXXXX`, (where `XXXXXXXXXX` is an example YouTube query string) you need to match an HTTP request with the following format:

```

GET /user/watch?v=GLCHldlwQsg HTTP/1.1
Host: www.youtube.com
User-Agent: curl/7.52.1
Accept: */*

```

Create the following web proxy addresses to match this video or query string:

```

config firewall proxy-address
edit "youtube"
set uuid 4ad63880-971e-51e7-7b2e-c69423ac6314
set type host-regex
set host-regex ".*youtube.com"
next
edit "query-string"
set uuid 7687a8c0-9727-51e7-5063-05edda03abbf
set host "youtube"
set path "/watch"
set query "v=XXXXXXXXXX"
end

```

Then create two proxy policies, one that allows access to all traffic and a second one that blocks access to the page that matches the query string

```

config firewall proxy-policy
edit 1
set uuid 92273e4e-8c53-51e7-a7bd-f26e6e15fc98
set proxy explicit-web
set dstintf "wan2"
set srcaddr "all"
set dstaddr "all"
set service "webproxy-connect"
set action accept
set schedule "always"
set utm-status enable
set profile-protocol-options "test"
set ssl-ssh-profile "test"
next
edit 2
set uuid d35ad06a-8c53-51e7-8511-17200f682a4a
set proxy explicit-web
set dstintf "wan2"
set srcaddr "all"
set dstaddr "query-string"
set service "webproxy"
set action accept
set schedule "always"
set utm-status enable
set av-profile "default"
set profile-protocol-options "test"

```

```

    set ssl-ssh-profile "test"
next
end

```

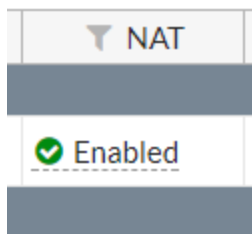
Firewall (5.6.1)

New firewall features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

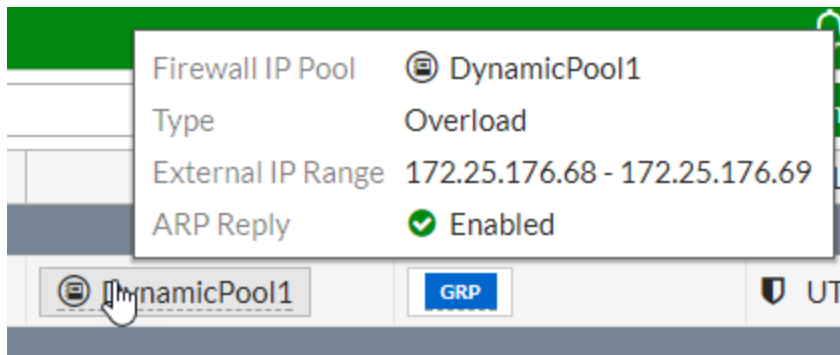
Improvement to NAT column in Policy List Display (305575)

The NAT column in the listing of Policy can provide more information than before.

Previously the field for the policy in the column only showed whether NAT was **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

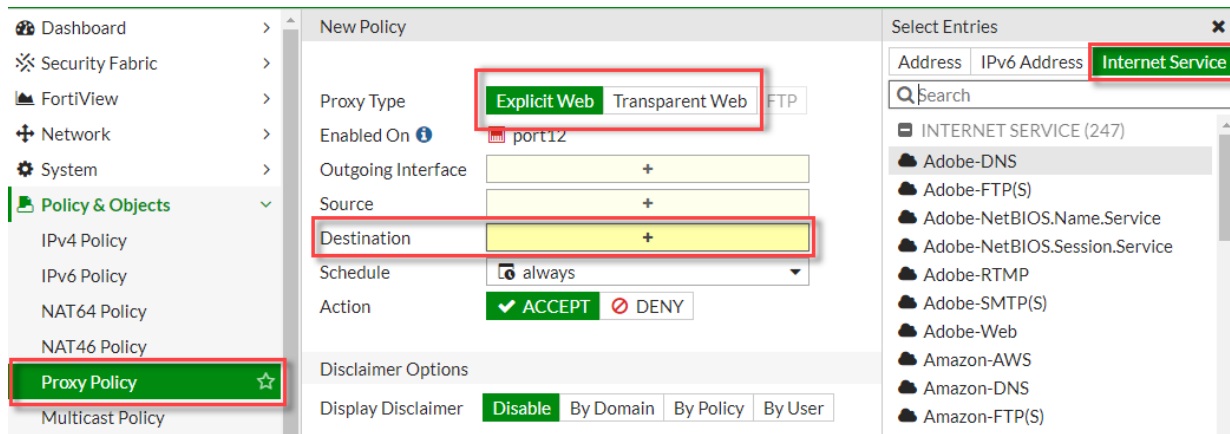


With the new improvements, not only does the field show the name of the Dynamic Pool, if one is being used, but the tool-tip feature is engaged if you hover the cursor over the icon in the field and provides even more specific information.



GUI support for adding Internet-services to proxy-policies (405509)

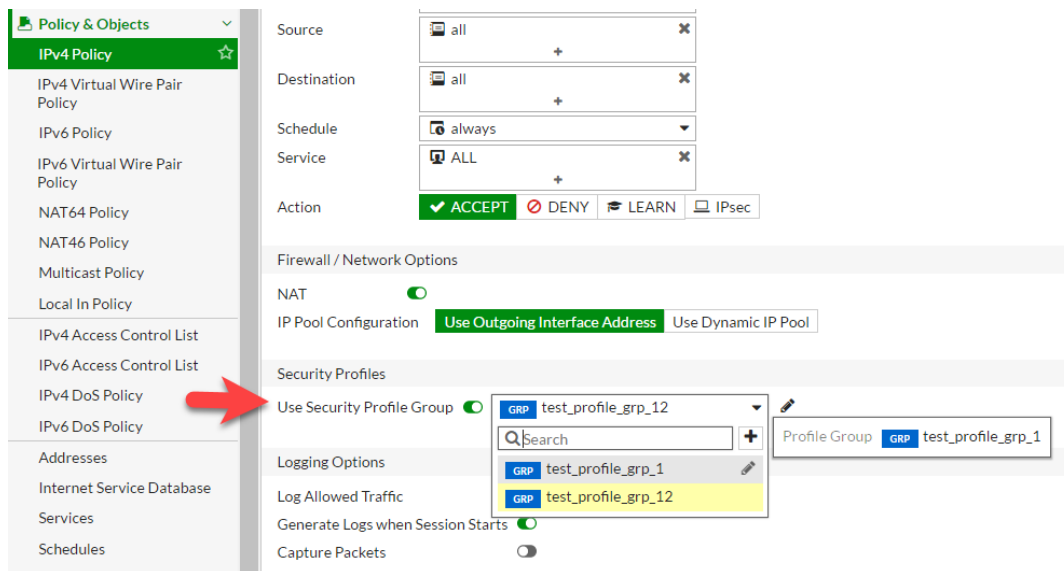
There is now GUI support for the configuration of adding Internet services to proxy policies. When choosing a destination address for a Proxy Policy, the Internet Service tab is visible and the listed objects can be selected.



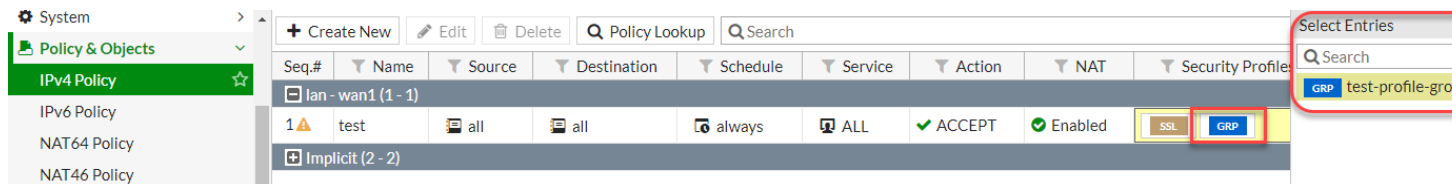
By choosing an **Internet Service** object as the **Destination**, this sets `internet-service` to enable and specifying either an **Address** or **IPv6 Address** object will set `internet-service` to disable.

Inline editing of profile groups on policy (409485)

There can now be editing to the profile groups within the policy list display window. Before, you had to go into the edit window of the policy, such as in the image below:



However, now the editing can be done from the list display of policies and clicking on the GRP icon. Right clicking on the icon will slide a window out from the left and left clicking will give you a drop-down menu.



Rename "action" to "nat" in firewall.central-snat-map (412427)

The `action` field option in the context of `firewall central-snat-map` in the CLI was considered by some to be a little ambiguous, so it has been renamed to `nat`, an option that can either be `enabled` or `disabled`.

Explicit proxy supports session-based Kerberos authentication (0437054)

- Explicit proxy supports session-based Kerberos authentication
- Transparent proxy will create an anonymous user if the an attempt to create a NTLM connection fails.
- When FSSO authentication fails for the explicit FTP proxy, the FortiGate responses with the error message "match policy failed".

Firewall (5.6)

New firewall features added to FortiOS 5.6.

Optimization of the firewall Service cache (355819)

In order to improve the efficiency and performance of the firewall Service cache, the following improvements have been made:

- The logic behind the structure of the cache has been simplified. Instead of storing ranges of port numbers, we store each individual port number in the cache
- Separate caches are created for each VDOM so that cache searches are faster.
- The performance of more frequently used cases has been increased
- Hash tables are used to improve the performance of complex cases. These could include such instances as:
 - service names tied to specific IP Ranges
 - redefinition (one port number with multiple service names)

New CLI option to prevent packet order problems for sessions offloaded to NP4 or NP6 (365497)

In order to prevent the issue of a packet, on FortiGate processing a heavy load of traffic, from being processed out of order, a new setting has been added to better control the timing of pushing the packets being sent to NP units.

The new option, `delay-tcp-npc-session`, has been added into the context of `config firewall policy` within the CLI

```
config firewall policy
  edit <Integer for policy ID>
    set delay-tcp-npc-session
  end
```

Policy may not be available on units not using NP units.

GUI changes to Central NAT (371516)

The Central NAT configuration interface prevents the accidental occurrence of being able to select “all” and “none” as two objects for the same field. It only allows the selecting of a single IP pool, though it is still possible to select multiple IP pools within the CLI.

Max value for Firewall User authentication changed (378085)

Previously, the maximum time that a member of a firewall user group could remain authenticated without any activity was 24 hours (1440 minutes). The maximum value for this setting has been changed to 72 hours (4320 minutes). This allow someone to log in but not be kicked off the system due to inactivity over the course of a weekend.

The syntax in the CLI for configuring this setting is:

```
config user group
  edit <name of user group>
    set authtimeout 4320
  end
```

Changes to default SSL inspection configuration (380736)

SSL is such a big part of normal traffic that SSL certificate inspection is no longer disabled by default. SSL inspection is not mandatory in both the CLI and GUI when it is applicable. The default setting is the Certificate Inspection level. As a result there have been a few changes within the CLI and the GUI.

CLI

The setting SSL-SSH-Profile, is a required option, with the default value being “certificate-inspection”, when it is applicable in the following tables:

- firewall.profile-group
- firewall.policy
- firewall.policy6,
- firewall.proxy-policy

The following default profiles are read-only:

- certificate-inspection
- deep-ssl-inspection

GUI

IPv4/IPv6 Policy and Explicit Proxy Policy edit window

- The configuration and display set up for SSL/SSH Inspection is now similar to "profile-protocol-option" option
- The disable/enable toggle button is no longer available for the Profile Protocol Option
- The default profile is set to "certificate-inspection"

IPv4/IPv6 Policy, Explicit Proxy Policy list page

- There is validation for SSL-SSH-Profile when configuring UTM profiles

SSL/SSH Inspection list page

- There is no delete menu on GUI for default ssl profiles
- The "Edit" menu has been changed to "View" for default SSL profiles
- The default SSL profile entries are considered an implicit class and are grayed out

SSL/SSH Inspection edit window

- The only input for default SSL profiles is now download/view trusted certificate links
- To return to the List page from default SSL profiles, the name of the button is now "Return"

Profile Group edit window

- There is no check box for SSL-SSH-Profile. It is always required.

Name change conventions due to upgrade

Starting in 5.6, the profiles "certificate-inspection" and "deep-inspection" are set up by the firmware as default read-only profiles. If you have profiles with these names that were configured in a previous version of FortiOS, rather than overwrite the firmware's default profile, profiles with these names will be upgraded to reflect the configuration conventions of the new firmware but the profile names will be changed by adding a prefix of "_upg_".

Add firewall policy comment field content to log messages (387865)

There has been a need by some customer to have some information in the logs that includes specific information about the traffic that produced the log. The rather elegant solution is that when the log-policy-comment option is enabled, the comment field from the policy will be included in the log. In order to make the logs more useful regarding the traffic just include a customized comment in the policy and enable this setting.

Syntax

```
config system settings
    set log-policy-comment [enable | disable]
end
```

- This setting is for all traffic and security logs.
- It can be select on a per VDOM basis

Learning mode changes profile type to single (387999)

The Learning mode does not function properly when it is applied to a policy that has a UTM profile group applied to it. The logging that should be taking place from the Learning Mode profiles does not occur as intended, and the

Automatically switching the profile type to single on a policy with Learning mode enabled prevents it from being affected by the UTM policy groups.

MAC address authentication in firewall policies and captive portals (391739)

When enabled, a MAC authentication request will be sent to `fnbamd` on any traffic. If the authentication receives a positive response, login becomes available. If the response is negative the normal authentication process takes over.

CLI

New option in the firewall policy setting

```
config firewall policy
  edit <policy ID>
    set radius-mac-auth-bypass [enable |disable]
  end
```

New option in the interface setting

```
config system interface
  edit <interface>
    set security-mode captive-portal
    set security-mac-auth-bypass
  end
```

Display resolved IP addresses for FQDN in policy list (393927)

If a FQDN address object is used in a policy, hovering the cursor over the icon for that object will show a tool tip that lists the parameters of the address object. This tool tip now includes the IP address that the FQDN resolves to.

Added comment for acl-policy, interface-policy and DoS-policy (396569)

A comment field has been added to the following policy types:

- acl-policy
- interface-policy
- DoS-policy

Comments of up to 1023 characters can be added through the CLI.

Examples:

DoS policy

```
config firewall DoS-policy
  edit 1
    set comment "you can put a comment here(Max 1023)."
```

Interface policy

```
config firewall interface-policy
  edit 1
    set comment "you can put a comment here(max 1023)."
```

```
set service "ALL"
end
```

Firewall ACL

```
config firewall acl
edit 1
set status disable
set comment "you can put a comment here(max 1023)."
set interface "port5"
set srcaddr "all"
set dstaddr "all"
set service "ALL"
end
```

Internet service settings moved to more logical place in CLI (397029)

The following settings have moved from the application context of the CLI to the firewall context:

- internet-service
- internet-service-custom

Example of internet-service

```
config firewall internet-service 1245324
set name "Fortinet-FortiGuard"
set reputation 5
set icon-id 140
set offset 1602565
config entry
edit 1
set protocol 6
set port 443
set ip-range-number 27
set ip-number 80
next
edit 2
set protocol 6
set port 8890
set ip-range-number 27
set ip-number 80
next
edit 3
set protocol 17
set port 53
set ip-range-number 18
set ip-number 31
next
edit 4
set protocol 17
set port 8888
set ip-range-number 18
set ip-number 31
next
end
```

Example of internet-service-custom

```
config firewall internet-service-custom
edit "custom1"
set comment "custom1"
config entry
edit 1
set protocol 6
config port-range
edit 1
set start-port 30
set end-port 33
next
end
set dst "google-drive" "icloud"
next
end
next
end
```

Example of get command:

```
get firewall internet-service-summary
Version: 00004.00002
Timestamp: 201611291203
Number of Entries: 1349
```

Certificate key size selection (397883)

FortiOS will now support different SSL certificate key lengths from the HTTPS server. FortiOS will select a key size from the two options of 1024 and 2048, to match the key size (as close as possible, rounding up) on the HTTPS server. If the size of the key from the server is 512 or 1024 the proxy will select a 1024 key size. If the key size from the servers is over 1024, the proxy will select a key size of 2048.

CLI changes:

In `ssl-ssh-profile` remove:

- `certname-rsa`
- `certname-dsa`
- `certname-ecdsa`

In `vpn certificate` setting, add the following options :

- `certname-rsa1024`
- `certname-rsa2048`
- `certname-dsa1024`
- `certname-dsa2048`
- `certname-ecdsa256`
- `certname-ecdsa384`

AWS API integration for dynamic firewall address object (400265)

Some new settings have been added to the CLI that will support instance information being retrieved directly from the AWS server. The IP address of a newly launched instance can be automatically added to a certain firewall address group if it meets specific requirements. The new address type is: ADDR_TYPE_AWS

New CLI configuration settings:

The AWS settings

```
config aws
  set access-key
  set secret-key
  set region
  set vpc-id
  set update-interval
```

- access-key - AWS access key.
- secret-key - AWS secret key.
- region - AWS region name.
- vpc-id - AWS VPC ID.
- update-interval - AWS service update interval (60 - 600 sec, default = 60).

The AWS address:

```
config firewall address
  edit <address name>
    set type aws
    set filter <filter values>
```

The filter can be a combination of any number of conditions, as long as the total length of filter is less than 2048 bytes. The syntax for the filter is:

```
<key1=value1> [& <key2=value2>] [| <key3=value3>]
```

For each condition, it includes a key and value, the supported keys are:

1. instanceId, (e.g. instanceId=i-12345678)
2. instanceType, (e.g. instanceType=t2.micro)
3. imageId, (e.g. imageId=ami-123456)
4. keyName, (e.g. keyName=aws-key-name)
5. architecture, (e.g. architecture=x86)
6. subnetId, (e.g. subnetId=sub-123456)
7. placement.availabilityzone, (e.g. placement.availabilityzone=us-east-1a)
8. placement.groupname, (e.g. placement.groupname=group-name)
9. placement.tenancy, (e.g. placement.tenancy=tenancy-name)
10. privateDnsName, (e.g. privateDnsName=ip-172-31-10-211.us-west-2.compute.internal)
11. publicDnsName, (e.g. publicDnsName=ec2-54-202-168-254.us-west-2.compute.amazonaws.com)

12. AWS instance tag, each tag includes a key and value, the format of tag set is: `tag.Name=Value`, maximum of 8 tags are supported.

Internet service configuration (405518)

To make the CLI configuration of Internet service configuration more intuitive, the settings for Internet service in Explicit Web proxy are closer to those in the Firewall policy. An Internet service enable switch has been added to the Explicit Web proxy with the same text description as the Firewall policy.

CLI:

The relevant options in the firewall policy are:

```
config firewall policy
edit 1
    set internet-service enable
    set internet-service-id 327681 1572864 917519 393225 1572888 1572877 917505
next
end
```

The Explicit Web proxy is now has these options:

```
config firewall proxy-policy
edit 1
set uuid f68e0426-dda8-51e6-ac04-37fc3f92cadf
set proxy explicit-web
set dstintf "port9"
set srcaddr "all"
set internet-service 2686980
set action accept
set schedule "always"
set logtraffic all
next
end
```

Changes to SSL abbreviate handshake (407544)

The SSL handshake process has changed to make troubleshooting easier.

- In order to better identify which clients have caused SSL errors, the WAD SSL log will use the original source address rather than the source address of packets.
- The return value of `wad_ssl_set_cipher` is checked.
- The `wad_ssl_session_match` has been removed because it will add the connection into bypass cache and bypass further inspection.
- DSA and ECDSA certificates are filtered for `admin-server-cert`
- `cert-inspect` is reset after a WAD match to a Layer 7 policy
- An option to disable the use of SSL abbreviate handshake has been added

CLI addition

```
config firewall ssl setting
    set abbreviate-handshake [enable|disable]
```


NGFW mode in the VDOM - NAT & SSL Inspection considerations (407547)

Due to how the NGFW Policy mode works, it can get complicated in the two areas of NAT and SSL Deep Inspection. To match an application against a policy, some traffic has to pass through the FortiGate in order to be properly identified. Once that happens may end up getting mapped to a different policy, where the new policy will be appropriately enforced.

NAT

In the case of NAT being used, the first policy that is triggered to identify the traffic might require NAT enabled for it to work correctly. i.e., without NAT enabled it may never be identified, and thus not fall through. Let's use a very simple example:

Policy 1: Block Youtube

Policy 2: Allow everything else (with NAT enabled)

Any new session established will never be identified immediately as Youtube, so it'll match policy #1 and let some traffic go to try and identify it. Without NAT enabled to the Internet, the session will never be setup and thus stuck here.

Solution:

- NAT for NGFW policies must be done via Central SNAT Map
- Central SNAT Map entries now have options for 'srcintf', 'dstintf' and 'action'.
- If no IP-pools are specified in the Central SNAT entry, then the outgoing interface address will be used.
- NGFW policies now must use a single default ssl-ssh-profile. The default ssl-ssh-profile can be configured under the system settings table.

SSL

In the case of SSL inspection, the issue is a bit simpler. For each policy there are 3 choices:

1. No SSL,
2. Certificate Only
3. Deep Inspection.

For 1. and 2. there is no conflict and the user could enable them inter-changeably and allow policy fallthrough.

The issue happens when:

- The first policy matched, uses **Certificate Only**
- After the application is detected, it re-maps the session to a new policy which has **Deep Inspection** enabled

This switching of behavior is the main cause of the issue.

Solution:

- Multiple SSL profiles have been replaced with a single page of settings
- The user can setup exemptions for destination web category, source IP or etc.

CLI

Changes

```
config system settings
  set inspection-mode flow
  set policy-mode [standard | ngfw]
```

Has been changed to:

```
config system settings
  set inspection-mode flow
  set ngfw-mode [profile-based | policy-based]
```

- **ngfw-mode** - Next Generation Firewall mode.
- **profile-based** - Application and web-filtering is configured using profiles applied to policy entries.
- **policy-based** - Application and web-filtering is configured as policy match conditions.

Additions

Setting the vdom default ssl-ssh-profile

```
config system settings
  set inspection-mode flow
  set ngfw-mode policy-based
  set ssl-ssh-profile <profile>
```

ssl-ssh-profile - VDOM SSL SSH profile.

Setting srcintf, dstintf, action on the central-snat policy

```
config firewall central-snat-map
  edit <id>
    set srcintf <names or any>
    set dstintf <names or any>
    set action (permit | deny)
```

- **srcintf** - Source interface name.
- **dstintf** - Destination interface name.
- **action** - Action of central SNAT policy.

GUI

System settings, VDOM settings list/dialog:

- A field has been added to show the default `ssl-ssh-profile`

IPv4/v6 Policy list and dialogs:

- In NGFW policy-based mode, there are added tool tips under NAT columns/fields to indicate that NAT must be configured via Central SNAT Map. Additionally, links to redirect to Central SNAT list were added.
- Default `ssl-ssh-profile` is shown in the policy list and dialog for any policies doing NGFW (`application, application-categories, url-categories`) or UTM (`av-profile etc.`) inspection.
 - Default `ssl-ssh-profile` is disabled from editing in policy list dialog

Central SNAT Policy list and dialogs:

- In both `profile-based` & `policy-based ngfw-mode`, fields for `srcintf`, `dstintf` were added to Central SNAT policies entries.
- In `policy-based` mode only, a toggle-switch for **NAT Action** was added in Central SNAT policy dialog. The action is also configurable from the **Action** column in Central SNAT policy list.

SSL/SSH Inspection list:

- In policy-based mode only, the navigation bar link to **SSL/SSH Inspection** redirects to the profiles list
- In policy-based mode only, the **SSL/SSH Inspection** list table indicates which profile is the current VDOM default. Additionally, options are provided in the list menu and context menu to change the current VDOM default.

Support HTTP policy for flow-based inspection (411666)

It is possible to implement an HTTP-policy in a VDOM that is using the Flow-based inspection mode. Enabling the HTTP-policy causes the traffic to be redirected to WAD so that the traffic can be properly matched and processed.

Support for CA chain downloading to improve certificate verification (369270)

During certificate verification, if the certificate chain is not complete and CA issuer information exists in the certificate, FortiOS attempts to download intermediate/root CAs from the HTTP server and attempts to perform chain verification. The downloaded CAs are saved in a cache (max 256) to be re-used for future certificate validation. CAs are removed from the cache if they are inactive or not needed for more than 1 hour.

CA chain downloading is used to improve verification results for certificates that are difficult to verify. The CAs are kept in the cache to improve performance.

Managed FortiSwitch OS 3.6.0 (FortiOS 5.6.3)

New managed FortiSwitch features added to FortiOS 5.6.3 if the FortiSwitch is running FortiSwitch OS 3.6.0.

Firewall policy now required for RADIUS traffic (434470)

In FortiLink mode, you must manually create a firewall policy to allow RADIUS traffic for 802.1x authentication from the FortiSwitch (for example, from the FortiLink interface) to the RADIUS server through the FortiGate.

STP root guard (376015)

Enable root guard on all ports that should not be root bridges. Do not enable root guard on the root port. You must have STP enabled to be able to use root guard.

Using the FortiGate GUI

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch**.
2. Right-click on a port.
3. Select **Enable** or **Disable**.

Using the FortiGate CLI

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
edit <switch-id>
config ports
edit <port name>
set stp-root-guard {enabled | disabled}
end
end
```

STP BPDU guard (406182)

When BPDU guard is enabled on STP edge ports, any BPDUs received cause the ports to go down for a specified number of minutes. The BPDUs are not forwarded, and the network edge is enforced.

There are two prerequisites for using BPDU guard:

- You must define the port as an edge port with the `set edge-port enable` command.
- You must enable STP on the switch interface with the `set stp-state enabled` command.

Using the FortiGate GUI

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch**.
2. Right-click on a port.
3. Select **Enable** or **Disable**.

Using the FortiGate CLI

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
edit <switch-id>
config ports
edit <port name>
set stp-bpdu-guard {enabled | disabled}
set stp-bpdu-guard-time <0-120>
end
end
```

FortiSwitch log message changes (438738)

More details are now provided in exported FortiSwitch logs, for example:

- New Switch-Controller user field and daemon-name ui fields.
- Removed Switch-Controller keyword from the msg field
- Changed UpdSwConf keyword in msg field to FortiSwitch in flcfgd logs
- Removed the VDOM keyword from the msg field in flcfgd logs
- Removed the Fortiswitch keyword before SN in the msg field
- Changed syslog to have switch SN first followed by a space and then the first word following with a capital (in the msg field)

Use the following CLI commands to enable the export of FortiSwitch logs and to set the level of logging included. The system logs all messages at and above the logging severity level you select. For example, if you select **error**, the system logs error, critical, alert, and emergency level messages.

```
config switch-controller switch-log
    set status (*enable | disable)
    set severity [emergency | alert | critical | error | warning | notification |
        *information | debug]
end
```

Support FSW BPDU Guard (442921) (442922)

With standard STP, a device that sends BPDU(s) to any switch port becomes a member of that switch's STP network topology. In order to enforce a network edge, the access ports on the switch can be configured with BPDU guard. With BPDU guard enabled, the port does not forward BPDUs upstream (toward its root bridge). Instead, when a BPDU guard enabled port receives any BPDU, it immediately puts the port into a blocking state and alerts the user.

This prevents the access port from accepting the downstream device, removing it from the receiving switch's STP calculations. In order to unblock the port after bpdu guard has triggered, the user must execute a reset command. After the port is reset, it will resume normal operation and return to a blocking state only if another BPDU is received.

BPDU guard is typically used in conjunction with Root Guard to enforce a specific network topology.

Syntax

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit <switch SN>
        config ports
            edit <port>
                set stp-bpdu-guard <enable | *disable>
                set stp-bpdu-guard-timeout <time> (0-120 in minutes)
            next
        end
    next
end

config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit <switch SN>
        config ports
            edit <port>
                set stp-root-guard <enable | *disable>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

```
diagnose switch-controller dump stp <switch SN> <instance>
diagnose switch-controller bpdu-guard-status <switch SN>
```

Managed switch CLI features added to GUI (448722)

Added new optional columns "Edge Port", "LLDP Profile", "QoS Policy", "STP BPDU Guard", "STP Root Guard" in **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports**.

This would allow administrators to make changes to the features above to multiple switch ports at the same time.

Added unit in help-text when setting max-rate/min-rate under switch-controller qos queue-policy (449487) (449869)

Modified the CLI help-text on the FortiGate to show priority under strict schedule when setting max-rate/min-rate under switch-controller qos queue-policy.

Syntax

```
set priority-0
queue-0 COS queue 0. (lowest priority)
queue-1 COS queue 1.
queue-2 COS queue 2.
queue-3 COS queue 3.
queue-4 COS queue 4.
queue-5 COS queue 5.
queue-6 COS queue 6.
queue-7 COS queue 7. (highest priority)
```

Added FortiSwitch factory-reset functionality to the FortiOS GUI (393205)

Added a **Factory Reset** button to the **WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch** page when a FortiSwitch document is selected.

Syntax

```
execute switch-controller factory-rest <switch sn>
```

Managed FortiSwitch OS 3.6.0 (FortiOS 5.6.1)

New managed FortiSwitch features added to FortiOS 5.6.1 if the FortiSwitch is running FortiSwitch OS 3.6.0.

Simplified method to convert a FortiSwitch to standalone mode (393205)

There is an easier way to convert a FortiSwitch from FortiLink mode to standalone mode so that it will no longer be managed by a FortiGate:

- `execute switch-controller factory-reset <switch-id>`
This command returns the FortiSwitch to the factory defaults and then reboots the FortiSwitch. If the FortiSwitch is configured for FortiLink auto-discovery, FortiGate can detect and automatically authorize the FortiSwitch.

- `execute switch-controller set-standalone <switch-id>`

This command returns the FortiSwitch to the factory defaults, reboots the FortiSwitch, and prevents the FortiGate from automatically detecting and authorizing the FortiSwitch.

You can disable FortiLink auto-discovery on multiple FortiSwitches using the following commands:

```
config switch-controller global
    set disable-discovery <switch-id>
end
```

You can also add or remove entries from the list of FortiSwitches that have FortiLink auto-discovery disabled using the following commands:

```
config switch-controller global
    append disable-discovery <switch-id>
    unselect disable-discovery <switch-id>
end
```

Quarantines (410828)

Quarantined MAC addresses are blocked on the connected FortiSwitches from the network and the LAN.

NOTE: You must enable the quarantine feature in the FortiGate CLI using the `set quarantine enable` command. You can add MAC addresses to the quarantine list before enabling the quarantine feature, but the quarantine does not go into effect until enabled.

Quarantining a MAC address

Using the FortiGate GUI

1. Select the host to quarantine.
 - Go to **Security Fabric > Physical Topology**, right-click on a host, and select **Quarantine Host on FortiSwitch**.
 - Go to **Security Fabric > Logical Topology**, right-click on a host, and select **Quarantine Host on FortiSwitch**.
 - Go to **FortiView > Sources**, right-click on an entry in the Source column, and select **Quarantine Host on FortiSwitch**.
2. Click **OK** to confirm that you want to quarantine the host.

Using the FortiGate CLI

```
config switch-controller quarantine
    set quarantine enable
    edit <MAC_address>
        set description <string>
        set tags <tag1 tag2 tag3 ...>
    next
next
end
```

Option	Description
MAC_address	A layer-2 MAC address in the following format: 12:34:56:aa:bb:cc
string	Optional. A description of the MAC address being quarantined.
tag1 tag2 tag3 ...	Optional. A list of arbitrary strings.

Viewing quarantine entries

Quarantine entries are created on the FortiGate that is managing the FortiSwitch.

Using the FortiGate GUI

1. Go to **Monitor > Quarantine Monitor**.
2. Click **Quarantined on FortiSwitch**.

Using the FortiGate CLI

Use the following command to view the quarantine list of MAC addresses:

```
show switch-controller quarantine
```

When the quarantine feature is enabled on the FortiGate, it creates a quarantine VLAN (qtn.<FortiLink_port_name>) on the virtual domain. The quarantine VLAN is applied to the allowed and untagged VLANs on all connected FortiSwitch ports.

Use the following command to view the quarantine VLAN:

```
show system interface qtn.<FortiLink_port_name>
```

Use the following command to view how the quarantine VLAN is applied to the allowed and untagged VLANs on all connected FortiSwitch ports:

```
show switch-controller managed-switch
```

Releasing MAC addresses from quarantine

Using the FortiGate GUI

1. Go to **Monitor > Quarantine Monitor**.
2. Click **Quarantined on FortiSwitch**.
3. Right-click on one of the entries and select **Delete** or **Remove All**.
4. Click **OK** to confirm your choice.

Using the FortiGate CLI

Use the following commands to delete a quarantined MAC address:

```
config switch-controller quarantine
config targets
    delete <MAC_address>
end
```


When the quarantine feature is disabled, all quarantined MAC addresses are released from quarantine. Use the following commands to disable the quarantine feature:

```
config switch-controller quarantine
    set quarantine disable
end
```

Assign untagged VLANs to a managed FortiSwitch port (410828)

Use the following commands to assign untagged VLANs to a managed FortiSwitch port:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
    edit <managed-switch>
        config ports
            edit <port>
                set untagged-vlans <VLAN-name>
            next
        end
    next
end
```

View, create, and assign multiple 802.1X policy definitions (408389 and 403901)

Previously, you could create one 802.1X policy for all managed FortiSwitches in a virtual domain. Now, you can create multiple 802.1X policies and assign a different 802.1X policy to each managed FortiSwitch port.

View security policies for managed FortiSwitches

You can view security policies for managed FortiSwitches in two places:

- Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Security Policies**.
- Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports** and click the **+** next to a FortiSwitch. The security policy for each port is listed in the Security Policy column.

Create and assign multiple 802.1X policy definitions for managed FortiSwitches

Previously, you could create one 802.1X policy for all managed FortiSwitches in a virtual domain. Now, you can create multiple 802.1X policies and assign a different 802.1X policy to each managed FortiSwitch port.

To create an 802.1X security policy:

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Security Policies**.
2. Click **Create New**.
3. Enter a name for the new FortiSwitch security policy.
4. For the security mode, select **Port-based** or **MAC-based**.
5. Click **+** to select which user groups will have access.
6. Enable or disable guest VLANs on this interface to allow restricted access for some users.
7. Enter the number of seconds for authentication delay for guest VLANs. The range is 60-900 seconds.
8. Enable or disable authentication fail VLAN on this interface to allow restricted access for users who fail to access the guest VLAN.
9. Enable or disable MAC authentication bypass (MAB) on this interface.
10. Enable or disable EAP pass-through mode on this interface.

11. Enable or disable whether the session timeout for the RADIUS server will overwrite the local timeout.
12. Click **OK**.

To apply an 802.1X security policy to a managed FortiSwitch port:

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports**.
2. Click the **+** next to a FortiSwitch.
3. In the Security Policy column for a port, click **+** to select a security policy.
4. Click **OK** to apply the security policy to that port.

Override 802.1X settings

To override the 802.1X settings for a virtual domain:

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch**.
2. Click on a FortiSwitch faceplate and click **Edit**.
3. In the Edit Managed FortiSwitch page, move the **Override 802-1X settings** slider to the right.
4. In the Reauthentication Interval field, enter the number of minutes before reauthentication is required. The maximum interval is 1,440 minutes. Setting the value to 0 minutes disables reauthentication.
5. In the Max Reauthentication Attempts field, enter the maximum times that reauthentication is attempted. The maximum number of attempts is 15. Setting the value to 0 disables reauthentication.
6. Select **Deauthenticate** or **None** for the link down action. Selecting **Deauthenticate** sets the interface to unauthenticated when a link is down, and reauthentication is needed. Selecting **None** means that the interface does not need to be reauthenticated when a link is down.
7. Click **OK**.

Enable and disable switch-controller access VLANs through FortiGate (406718)

Access VLANs are VLANs that aggregate client traffic solely to the FortiGate. This prevents direct client-to-client traffic visibility at the layer-2 VLAN layer. Clients can only communicate with the FortiGate. After the client traffic reaches the FortiGate, the FortiGate can then determine whether to allow various levels of access to the client by shifting the client's network VLAN as appropriate.

Use `enable` to allow traffic only to and from the FortiGate and to block FortiSwitch port-to-port traffic on the specified VLAN. Use `disable` to allow normal traffic on the specified VLAN.

```
config system interface
  edit <VLAN name>
    set switch-controller-access-vlan {enable | disable}
  next
end
```

Override the admin password for all managed FortiSwitches (416261)

By default, each FortiSwitch has an admin account without a password. To replace the admin passwords for all FortiSwitches managed by a FortiGate, use the following commands:

```
config switch-controller switch-profile
  edit default
    set login-passwd-override {enable | disable}
    set login-passwd <password>
  next
end
```

If you had already applied a profile with the override enabled and the password set and then decide to remove the admin password, you need to apply a profile with the override enabled and use the `unset login-passwd` command; otherwise, your previously set password will remain in the FortiSwitch.

Configure an MCLAG with managed FortiSwitches (366617)

To configure a multichassis LAG (MCLAG) with managed FortiSwitches:

1. For each MCLAG peer switch, log into the FortiSwitch to create a LAG:

```
config switch trunk
  edit "LAG-member"
    set mode lacp-active
    set mclag-icl enable
    set members "<port>" "<port>"
  next
```

2. Enable the MCLAG on each managed FortiSwitch:

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit "<switch-id>"
    config ports
      edit "<trunk name>"
        set type trunk
        set mode {static | lacp-passive | lacp-active}
        set bundle {enable | disable}
        set members "<port>,<port>"
        set mclag {enable | disable}
      next
    end
  next
```

3. Log into each managed FortiSwitch to check the MCLAG configuration:

```
diagnose switch mclag
```

After the FortiSwitches are configured as MCLAG peer switches, any port that supports advanced features on the FortiSwitch can become a LAG port. When `mclag` is enabled and the LAG port names match, an MCLAG peer set is automatically formed. The member ports for each FortiSwitch in the MCLAG do not need to be identical to the member ports on the peer FortiSwitch.

Configure QoS with managed FortiSwitches (373581)

Quality of Service (QoS) provides the ability to set particular priorities for different applications, users, or data flows. **NOTE:** FortiGate does not support QoS for hard or soft switch ports.

To configure the QoS for managed FortiSwitches:

1. Configure a Dot1p map.

```
config switch-controller qos dot1p-map
  edit <Dot1p map name>
    set description <text>
```

```

        set priority-0 <queue number>
        set priority-1 <queue number>
        set priority-2 <queue number>
        set priority-3 <queue number>
        set priority-4 <queue number>
        set priority-5 <queue number>
        set priority-6 <queue number>
        set priority-7 <queue number>
    next
end

```

2. Configure a DSCP map.

```

config switch-controller qos ip-dscp-map
    edit <DSCP map name>
        set description <text>
        configure map <map_name>
            edit <entry name>
                set cos-queue <COS queue number>
                set diffserv {CS0 | CS1 | AF11 | AF12 | AF13 | CS2 | AF21 | AF22 | AF23
                    | CS3 | AF31 | AF32 | AF33 | CS4 | AF41 | AF42 | AF43 | CS5 | EF |
                    CS6 | CS7}
                set ip-precedence {network-control | internetwork-control | critic-ecp
                    | flashoverride | flash | immediate | priority | routine}
                set value <DSCP raw value>
            next
        end
    end
end

```

3. Configure the egress QoS policy.

```

config switch-controller qos queue-policy
    edit <QoS egress policy name>
        set schedule {strict | round-robin | weighted}
        config cos-queue
            edit [queue-<number>]
                set description <text>
                set min-rate <rate in kbps>
                set max-rate <rate in kbps>
                set drop-policy {taildrop | random-early-detection}
                set weight <weight value>
            next
        end
    next
end

```

4. Configure the overall policy that will be applied to the switch ports.

```

config switch-controller qos qos-policy
    edit <QoS egress policy name>
        set default-cos <default CoS value 0-7>
        set trust-dot1p-map <Dot1p map name>
        set trust-ip-dscp-map <DSCP map name>
        set queue-policy <queue policy name>
    next
end

```

5. Configure each switch port.

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <switch-id>
    config ports
      edit <port>
        set qos-policy <CoS policy>
      next
    end
  next
end
```

Reset PoE-enabled ports from the GUI (387417)

If you need to reset PoE-enabled ports, go to **WiFi & Switch Control > FortiSwitch Ports**, right-click on one or more PoE-enabled ports and select **Reset PoE** from the context menu.

You can also go to **WiFi & Switch Control > Managed FortiSwitch** and click on a port icon for the FortiSwitch of interest. In the FortiSwitch Ports page, right-click on one or more PoE-enabled ports and select **Reset PoE** from the context menu.

Adding preauthorized FortiSwitches (382774)

After you preauthorize a FortiSwitch, you can assign the FortiSwitch ports to a VLAN.

To preauthorize a FortiSwitch:

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed FortiSwitch**.
2. Click **Create New**.
3. In the New Managed FortiSwitch page, enter the serial number, model name, and description of the FortiSwitch.
4. Move the **Authorized** slider to the right.
5. Click **OK**.

The Managed FortiSwitch page shows a FortiSwitch faceplate for the preauthorized switch.

Managed FortiSwitch OS 3.6.0 (FortiOS 5.6)

New managed FortiSwitch features added to FortiOS 5.6 if the FortiSwitch is running FortiSwitch OS 3.6.0.

IGMP snooping (387515)

The GUI and CLI support the ability to configure IGMP snooping for managed switch ports.

To enable IGMP snooping from the GUI, go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch VLANs**, edit a VLAN and turn on **IGMP Snooping** under **Networked Devices**.

From the CLI, start by enabling IGMP snooping on the FortiGate:

```
config switch-controller igmp-snooping
  set aging-time <int>
  set flood-unknown-multicast (enable | disable)
end
```

Then enable IGMP snooping on a VLAN:

```
config system interface
  edit <vlan>
    set switch-controller-igmp-snooping (enable | disable)
  end
```

Use the following command to enable IGMP snooping on switch ports, and to override the global parameters for a specific switch.

```
config switch-controller managed-switch
  edit <switch>
    config ports
      edit port <number>
        set igmp-snooping (enable | disable)
        set igmps-flood-reports (enable | disable)
      next
    config igmp-snooping globals
      set aging-time <int>
      set flood-unknown-multicast (enable | disable)
    end
  next
end
```

User-port link aggregation groups (378470)

The GUI now supports the ability to configure user port LAGs on managed FortiSwitches.

To create a link aggregation group for FortiSwitch user ports:

1. Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports**
2. Click **Create New > Trunk**.
3. In the New Trunk Group page:
 - a. Enter a name for the trunk group
 - b. Select two or more physical ports to add to the trunk group
 - c. Select the mode: Static, Passive LACP, or Active LACP
4. Click **OK**.

DHCP blocking, STP, and loop guard on managed FortiSwitch ports (375860)

The managed FortiSwitch GUI now supports the ability to enable/disable DHCP blocking, STP and loop guard for FortiSwitch user ports.

Go to **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiSwitch Ports**. For any port you can select DHCP Blocking, STP, or Loop Guard. STP is enabled on all ports by default. Loop guard is disabled by default on all ports.

Switch profile enhancements (387398)

Defaults switch profiles are bound to every switch discovered by the FortiGate. This means that an administrator can establish a password for this profile or create a new profile and bind that profile to any switch. Consequently, the password provided shall be configured on the FortiSwitch against the default "admin" account already present.

Number of switches per FortiGate based on model (388024)

The maximum number of supported FortiSwitches depends on the FortiGate model:

FortiGate Model Range	Number of FortiSwitches Supported
Up to FortiGate-98 and FortiGate-VM01	8
FortiGate-100 to 280 and FortiGate-VM02	24
FortiGate-300 to 5xx	48
FortiGate-600 to 900 and FortiGate-VM04	64
FortiGate-1000 and up	128
FortiGate-3xxx and up, and FortiGate-VM08 and up	256

Miscellaneous configuration option changes

- The default value of `dhcp-snooping` (also called DHCP-blocking) is changed from `trusted` in FortiOS 5.4 to `untrusted` in FortiOS 5.6.
- The default value of `edge-port` is changed from `disabled` in FortiOS 5.4 to `enabled` in FortiOS 5.6.0.
- The default value for DHCP snooping on the FortiLink VLAN (system interface) is changed from “enabled” in FortiOS 5.6.2 and earlier to “disabled” in FortiOS 5.6.3 and later. Note that, in the GUI, DHCP snooping is automatically changed to “enable” when the DHCP server is enabled on the interface.

Additional GUI support

- Link aggregation of FortiSwitch ports
- DHCP trusted/untrusted, loop guard, and STP for FortiSwitch ports
- Connect to CLI support for FortiSwitch

FortiView (5.6.3)

New FortiView features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

Support learning reports and FortiAnalyzer (415806)

Both backend and GUI have been updated to support learning reports from FortiAnalyzer.

Backend updates the query configure list; GUI updates learning report to use log display device setting.

Added support to FortiView to sort by application risk and browsing time (249666)

Added ability to sort applications by threat level and by browsing time so that admin can quickly see and prioritize the riskier applications at the top of the list.

FortiView (5.6.1)

New FortiView features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

FortiView Dashboard Widget (434179)

A new widget type has been added to the FortiGate Dashboard, that displays compact FortiView data. Supported FortiViews include Source, Destination, Application, Country, Interfaces, Policy, Wifi Client, Traffic Shaper, Endpoint Vulnerability, Cloud User, Threats, VPN, Websites, Admin, and System. All usual visualizations are supported.

Widgets can be saved directly to the Dashboard from a filtered page in FortiView, or configured in the CLI.

Interface Categories (srcintfrole, etc) added to log data (434188)

In 5.6, logs and FortiView both sort log traffic into two interface categories: "Traffic from LAN/DMZ", and "Traffic from WAN." For greater compatibility and troubleshooting of FortiAnalyzer and FortiCloud setups, interface category fields that expose this information have been added to general log data in 5.6.1: `srcintfrole` and `dstintfrole` for better backend control and monitoring.

FortiView (5.6)

New FortiView features added to FortiOS 5.6.

Added Vulnerability score topology view (303786)

In **Physical Topology** and **Logical Topology** pages, there are two new views added: **Vulnerability**, and **Threat**. Drill-downs in these menus will now include Vulnerability/Threat information. In Vulnerability view, device bubbles are colored based on maximum vulnerability level, and bubble size is the vulnerability score. In Threat view, device bubbles are colored based on maximum threat level, and bubble size is the threat score.

FortiView VPN tunnel map feature (382767)

The FortiView VPN page now displays VPN tunnel connections between devices, and offers more information about tunnels and devices on drill-down.

Updated FortiView CSF topology pages (384188)

The FortiView **Physical Topology** and **Logical Topology** pages have been updated in 5.6.0 to reorganize and clarify larger deployments with servers and multi-directional traffic.

Historical FortiView includes FortiAnalyzer (387423)

Data from associated FortiAnalyzer devices can now be selected as a log display option for Historical FortiView.

FortiView menu reorganization (399713)

The order of FortiView pages has been reorganized in 5.6.0 based on the source interface of data being displayed:

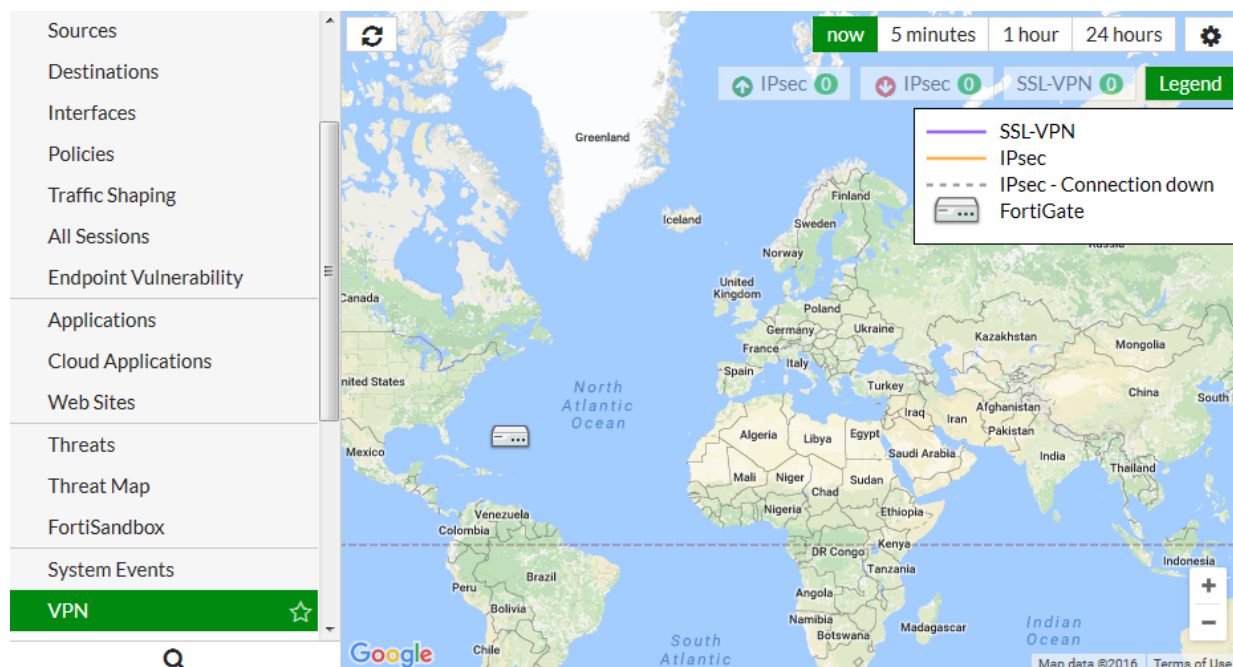
- Topology
- Traffic from LAN/DMZ
- Traffic from WAN
- All Segments

Data Exchange with FortiAnalyzer (393891)

Rather than sending all CSF information via log messages, FortiGate and FortiAnalyzer will now directly pass CSF information (tree, interface roles, user devices, HA members), if the FAZ responds to notices that are sent when the data has changed.

Google Maps Integration

FortiView now uses Google Maps to display location-related information. In this release the first view to use Google maps this component is the FortView VPN page. All current VPNs can be viewed on a fully scalable Google world map.



FortiView usability and organization updates (306247)

Several organization changes have been made to make the FortiView menu order less cluttered, and more intuitive.

- **WiFi Client Monitor** is now in FortiView, but is hidden when there is no managed FortiAP or WiFi Radio.
- **Country** view has been merged into **Destinations** view.

- **Failed Authentication** and **Admin Login** views have been merged into **System Events** view.

FortiGate VM enhancements for AWS, Azure, Google, SDN connectors and more (5.6.3)

The realm of virtual computing has become mainstream and not only does this mean that security appliances can also be virtual, there is also a requirement for security appliances in a virtual environment. These environments can be the publicly available platforms such as Amazon Web Services, Azure and Google Cloud Platform or they can be Software Defined Networks (SDN) such as those made by Cisco, HP, Nuage and OpenStack. For that reason, not only is the number of Virtual FortiOS variations growing along with what they can do, a number of the new features being introduced deal with integrating FortiOS into these environments.

In some cases the new feature isn't even part of the FortiOS code but a separate piece of software that not only allows the FortiOS-VM to be part of the virtual environment but allows the management software of the environment to manage the FortiOS-VM. Previously, these connectors to SDNs have been treated separately as specialized products with their own documentation. Because they are so integral to FortiOS in a world where virtual computing is becoming normal, this documentation is going to become more integrated into the normal FortiOS documentation.

Recipes are now being published for the cloud-based and SDN environments on the Fortinet Cookbook website.

- <http://cookbook.fortinet.com/amazon-web-services-aws/>
- <http://cookbook.fortinet.com/cisco-aci/>
- <http://cookbook.fortinet.com/microsoft-azure/>
- <http://cookbook.fortinet.com/nuage-vsp/>

FGT_VM64_AZURE and FGT_VM64_AZUREONDEMAND platforms (356702)

FortiOS runs in the Azure Cloud and supports the Azure Security Center NGFW feature. The `waagent` daemon is used to configure the VM to communicate with the Azure Cloud fabric.

- The kernel UDF filesystem is needed to mount the cdrom disc on first boot.
- `libmxml` is upgraded from v2.9 to v2.10

CLI Changes:

Added: `azure-security-center` logging destination

```
config log [azure-security-center | azure-security-center2]
  config filter
    set status [enable | disable]
    set appliance-id
    set policy-saskey
    set policy-name
    set eventhub-name
    set servicebus-namespace
  config setting
    set severity (see below)
    set forward-traffic [enable | disable]
    set local-traffic [enable | disable]
    set multicast-traffic [enable | disable]
    set sniffer-traffic [enable | disable]
    set anomaly [enable | disable]
```

```
set voip [enable | disable]
set gtp [enable | disable]
set dns [enable | disable]
set filter (see below)
set filter-type [include | exclude]
```

`severity` option includes the following levels of severity notifications:

- emergency
- alert
- critical
- error
- warning
- notification
- information
- debug

The `filter` option is set by included the logid list and/or its level as filters. Possibilities include:

- logid(...)
- traffic-level(...)
- event-level(...)
- virus-level(...)
- webfilter-level(...)
- ips-level(...)
- emailfilter-level(...)
- anomaly-level(...)
- voip-level(...)
- dlp-level(...)
- app-ctrl-level(...)
- waf-level(...)
- gtp-level(...)
- dns-level(...)

Example 1

```
config log azure-security-center
config setting
set filter "logid(40704,32042) "
```

Example 2

```
config log azure-security-center
config setting
set filter "event-level(information) "
```

The available levels are as the following: emergency, alert, critical, error, warning, notice, information, debugdebug

SDN Connector (404907)

FortiOS-VM is now supported in a Cisco ACI environment through the use of a SDN connector. The software can be found on the [Fortinet Service and Support site](#). The product name is FortiADC-Connector. Documentation can be found on the [Fortinet Documentation site](#) under the product heading of Fortinet Connectors

FortiGate-VM performance improvements and optimization (416548)

Performance has been improved for FortiOS VM platforms by implementing new features to improve efficiency and resource utilization. As well, you can now configure interrupt affinity and packet distribution to optimize performance for your VM environment. Interrupt affinity allows you to align interrupts from interfaces to specific CPUs. Packet distribution allows you to configure FortiGate-VM to distribute processing to multiple CPUs.

Configuring interrupt affinity

Use the following commands to configure interrupt affinity for two 10G interfaces (port2 and port3).

Interrupts from first interface are assigned to core #0 and those from the second interface are assigned to core #1.

```
config system affinity-interrupt
  edit 1
    set interrupt "port2-TxRx-0"
    set affinity-cpumask "0x1"
  next
  edit 2
    set interrupt "port2-TxRx-1"
    set affinity-cpumask "0x1"
  next
  edit 3
    set interrupt "port3-TxRx-0"
    set affinity-cpumask "0x2"
  next
  edit 4
    set interrupt "port3-TxRx-1"
    set affinity-cpumask "0x2"
end
```

Configuring packet distribution

Use the following commands to configure packet redistribution to redistribute packets from core #0 and #1 to all other cores.

The example is based on VM08:

```
config system affinity-packet-redistribution
  edit 1
    set interface "port2"
    set affinity-cpumask "0xFC"
  next
  edit 2
    set interface "port3"
    set affinity-cpumask "0xFC"
end
```

FortiGate-VM Models available for Google Cloud Platform (GCP) (422209)

The following FortiGate-VM models will be supported on Google Cloud Platform:

- FG-VM01
- FG-VM02
- FG-VM04
- FG-VM08



FG-VM00 is not supported.

Since GCP use netmask 32, static route must be configured on GCP VPC, instead of FGT.

Licenses will be interchangeable between platforms. A FG-VM04 license that functions in a VMware or Citrix environment can be also used in the GCP environment as well.

While an .out file will be necessary for upgrading, full downloadable images will not be needed for initial installation of the solution. GCP consists of pre-existing images that can be checked out of their library and deployed instantly. A difference between this environment and enterprise virtualization platforms is that machine size can never change. An n1-standard-4 has exactly 15 GB of RAM and 4 vCPUs. This can never be changed or edited by the end user or administrator.

The currently available GCP instances we are looking to support are as follows (these will/could change as vNIC values reveal themselves):

FG-VM	Equates to Instance Type	vCPU	RAM	Disks
FG-VM01-GC	n1-standard-1	1	3.75GB	16 (32 in Beta)
FG-VM02-GC	n1-standard-2	2	7.50 GB	16 (64 in Beta)
FG-VM04-GC	n1-standard-4	4	15 GB	16 (64 in Beta)
FG-VM08-GC	n1-standard-8	8	30 GB	16 (128 in Beta)
FG-VM16-GC	n1-standard-16	16	60 GB	16 (128 in Beta)
FG-VM32-GC	n1-standard-32	32	88 GB	16 (128 in Beta)
FG-VMUL-GC	any of the above and any new that could be created.			

Additional information from GCP: <https://cloud.google.com/compute/docs/images/building-custom-os>.

NPU KVM image for FortiHypervisor (435326)

Currently, there are 2 separate images of FortiOS that can run on FortiHypervisor:

1. Standard KVM image -- this is the one all customers have access to via the Fortinet Support site and FortiGuard
2. NPU support image -- this is a special branch, not available on support site or FortiGuard.

When FHV tries to deploy a VM that it gets from FortiGuard, it can only retrieve #1 but not #2. NPU versions are now supported by and available for FortiHypervisor.

FGT-VM AWS HA support (445721)

FortiGate-VMs in an Amazon Web Services environment support the use of HA.

This includes two parts:

1. HA with unicast heartbeat traffic.
2. AWS API supports to move secondary IPs and update routing tables.

CLI Changes:

Add: Unicast HA config

```
config system ha
    unicast-hb [enable|disable]
    unicast-hb-peerip <Unicast Heartbeat Peer IP>
end
```

Closed-Network FGT-VM (451872) (455174)

FortiGate-VM is not part of the FortiGuard Network for the purpose of upgrades.

Logging enhancements on FG-VMX (452701)

An event log is created when the Service Manager loses connectivity to a VMX instance. A unique serial number should be used for each VMX instance so that users can identify from the log which VMX instance is described.

SDN Connector - AWS (454233)

Improvements have been made in the support of FortiGate-VM integrating into the AWS environment.

1. `config aws setting` has been moved to the context of `config system sdn-connector`.

```
config system sdn-connector
    edit <string>
        set access-key <AWS access key ID>
        set secret-key <AWS secret access key>
        set region <AWS region name>
        set vpc-id <AWS VPC ID>
    end
```
2. Update to the GUI SDN connector edit page that supports allowing configuration of the following fields:
 - AWS access key ID
 - AWS secret access key
 - AWS region name
 - AWS VPC ID
 - Update Interval
3. Change to address edit page to allow configuration of the **Filter** field for Dynamic AWS address.
4. Update to the dynamic address monitor API to get resolved address list for dynamic AWS addresses.

NSX Connector Upgrade Support (454674) (458180)

Support for NSX connector upgrade to SDN connectors.

Change to config system sdn-connector:

```
config nsx setting
```

Change to config firewall address:

```
set type nsx
```

```
set type dynamic  
set sdn nsx
```



When using the sdn nsx setting, the user should also use the nsx rest-api password.

GUI fixes for the SDN Connector (458183) (459079) (459081)

- Update address list and policy list to show icon/tooltip of the dynamic address, the same way as FQDN address does.

Updates to SDN connector page

- Add back the **Enable Service** button from SVM Settings page (SVM only)
- Add back **VMX Statistics** list from SVM Settings page (SVM only)
- Add back api monitor for nsx service (SVM only)
- Remove **SVM Settings** page

Updates to Address List page

- Disable clone context menu for dynamic sdn address
- Add dynamic address details in colored labels
- Add tool-tip to name column; show invalid icon for unresolved dynamic address (the same way as FQDN address)

Update Policy List page

- add tool-tip to name column; show invalid icon for unresolved dynamic address (the same way as FQDN address)

FortiGate VM (5.6.0)

New Virtual FortiOS features added to FortiOS 5.6.0.

FGT-VM VCPUs (308297)

Fortinet has now launched licensing for FortiGate VMs that support larger than 8 vCPUs. The new models/licenses include:

- Support for up to 16 vCPU - FortiGate-VM16
- Support for up to 32 vCPU - FortiGate-VM32
- Support for unlimited vCPU - FortiGate-VMUL

Each of these models should be able to support up to 500 VDOMs.

Improvements to License page (382128)

The page has been rewritten with some minor improvements such as:

- An indicator to show when a VM is waiting for authentication or starting up
- Shows VM status when license is valid
- Shows CLI console window when VM is waiting too long for remote registration of server

Citrix XenServer tools support for XenServer VMs (387984)

This support allows users, with Citrix XenServer tools to read performance statistics from XenServer clients and do Xenmotion with servers in the same cluster



Since FortiGates don't support hardware hotplugging, the ability to do network interface of disk changes is not supported at this time.

There are no changes to the GUI, but there are some changes to the CLI.

A setting has been edited to control the debug level of the XenServer tools daemon

```
diag debug application xstoolsd <integer>
```

Integer = Debug level

An additional update has been added to set the update frequency for XenServer tools

```
config system global
  set xstools-update-frequency Xenserver <integer>
end
```

Enter an integer value from 30 to 300 (default = 60).

FOS VM supports more interfaces (393068)

The number of virtual interfaces that the VM version of FortiOS supports has been raised from 3 to 10.

NSX security group importing (403975)

A feature has been added to allow the importation of security group information from VMware's NSX firewall.

CLI Changes:

nsx group list

This is used to list NSX security Groups

Syntax:

```
execute nsx group list <name of the filter>
```

nsx group import

This is used to import NSX security groups.

Syntax:

```
execute nsx group import <vdom> <name of the filter>
```

nsx group delete

This is used to delete NSX security Groups

Syntax:

```
execute nsx group delete <vdom> <name of the filter>
```

nsx.setting.update-period

This is used to set the update period for the NSX security group

Syntax:

```
config.nsx.setting.update-period <0 - 3600 in seconds>
```

0 means disabled

Default value: 0

Non-vdom VM models FGVM1V/FGVM2V/FGVM4V (405549)

New models of the FortiGate-VM have been introduced. These match up with the existing FortiGate-VM models of FG-VM01, FG-VM02 and FG-VM04. The difference being that the new models don't support VDOMs.

Original FortiGate-VM	New FortiGate-VM without VDOM support
FG-VM01	FG-VM01v
FG-VM02	FG-VM02v
FG-VM04	FG-VM04v

Hardware acceleration (5.6.3)

New hardware acceleration features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

Bandwidth control for traffic between a managed FortiSwitch and an NP6 processor (437911)

In some cases, the managed FortiSwitch buffer size is larger than the buffer size of the NP6 processor that receives traffic from the managed switch. If this happens, burst traffic from the managed switch may exceed the capacity of the NP6 processor and sessions may be dropped.

You can use the following command to configure bandwidth control between a managed FortiSwitch and an NP6 processor. Enabling bandwidth control can smooth burst traffic and keep the NP6 from getting overwhelmed and dropping sessions.

Use the following command to enable bandwidth control:

```
config system npu
    set sw-np-bandwidth {0G | 2G | 4G | 5G | 6G}
end
```

The default setting is 0G which means no bandwidth control. The other options limit the bandwidth to 2Gbps, 4Gbps and so on.

SNMP/CLI monitoring capabilities of NP6 session table and session drift (441532)

In some cases sessions processed by NP6 processors may fail to be deleted leading to a large number of idle sessions. This is called session drift. New monitoring capabilities have been added to allow you to use SNMP to be alerted when the number of idle sessions becomes high. The SNMP fields allow you to see which NP6 processor has the abnormal number of idle sessions and you can use a diagnose command to delete them.

You can use the following diagnose command to determine if drift is occurring:

```
diagnose npu np6 sse-drift-summary
NPU      drv-drift
-----
np6_0    0
np6_1    0
-----
Sum      0
-----
```

The command output shows a drift summary for all the NP6 processors in the system, and shows the total drift. Normally the sum is 0. The previous command output, from a FortiGate-1500D, shows that the 1500D's two NP6 processors are not experiencing any drift.

If the sum is not zero, then extra idle sessions may be accumulating. You can use the following command to delete those sessions:

```
diagnose npu np6 sse-purge-drift <np6_id> [<time>]
```

Where `<np6_id>` is the number (starting with NP6_0 with a `np6_id` of 0) of the NP6 processor for which to delete idle sessions. `<time>` is the age in seconds of the idle sessions to be deleted. All idle sessions this age and older are deleted. The default time is 300 seconds.

The `diagnose npu np6 sse-stats <np6_id>` command output also includes a `drv-drift` field that shows the total drift for one NP6 processor.

For SNMP monitoring, the following MIB fields have been added. These fields allow you to use SNMP to monitor more session table information for NP6 processors including drift for each NP6 processor.

```
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgNPUNumber.0 = INTEGER: 2
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgNPUName.0 = STRING: NP6
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgNPUDrvDriftSum.0 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgNPUIndex.0 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgNPUIndex.1 = INTEGER: 1
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgNPUSessionTblSize.0 = Gauge32: 33554432
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgNPUSessionTblSize.1 = Gauge32: 33554432
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgNPUSessionCount.0 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgNPUSessionCount.1 = Gauge32: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgNPUDrvDrift.0 = INTEGER: 0
FORTINET-FORTIGATE-MIB::fgNPUDrvDrift.1 = INTEGER: 0
```

Hardware acceleration (5.6.1)

New hardware acceleration features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

Optionally disable NP6 offloading of traffic passing between 10Gbps and 1Gbps interfaces (392436)

Due to NP6 internal packet buffer limitations, some offloaded packets received at a 10Gbps interface and destined for a 1Gbps interface can be dropped, reducing performance for TCP and IP tunnel traffic. If you experience this performance reduction, you can use the following command to disable offloading sessions passing from 10Gbps interfaces to 1Gbps interfaces:

```
config system npu
    set host-shortcut-mode host-shortcut
end
```

Select `host-shortcut` to stop offloading TCP and IP tunnel packets passing from 10Gbps interfaces to 1Gbps interfaces. TCP and IP tunnel packets passing from 1Gbps interfaces to 10Gbps interfaces are still offloaded as normal.

If `host-shortcut` is set to the default `bi-directional` setting, packets in both directions are offloaded.

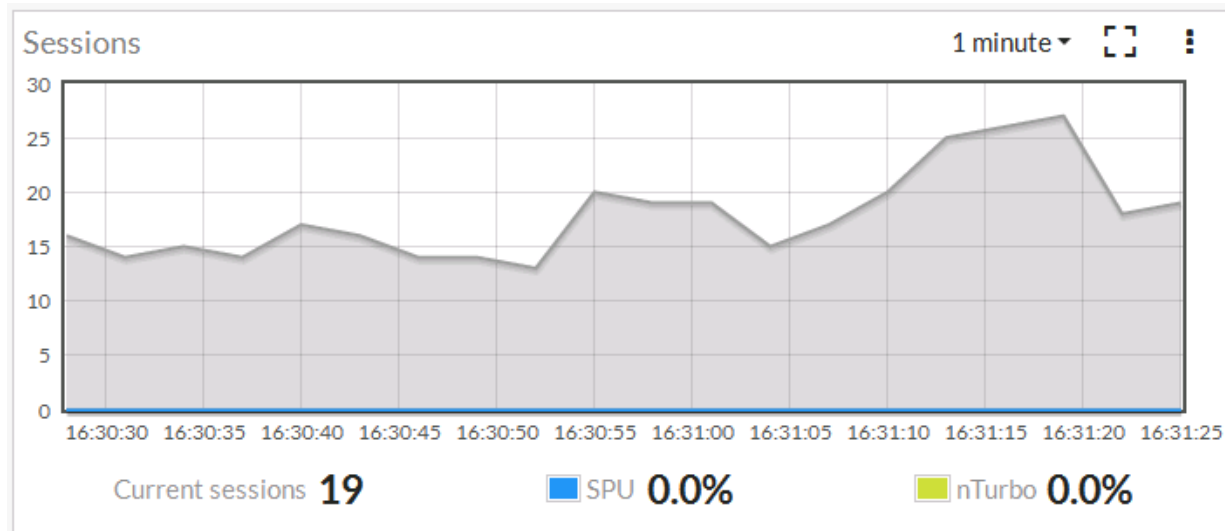
Hardware acceleration (5.6)

New hardware acceleration features added to FortiOS 5.6.

Improved visibility of SPU and nTurbo hardware acceleration (389711)

All hardware acceleration hardware has been renamed Security Processing Units (SPUs). This includes NPx and CPx processors.

SPU and nTurbo data is now visible in a number of places on the GUI. For example, the Active Sessions column pop-up in the firewall policy list and the Sessions dashboard widget:



You can also add SPU filters to many FortiView pages.

NP4Lite option to disable offloading ICMP traffic in IPsec tunnels (383939)

In some cases ICMP traffic in IPsec VPN tunnels may be dropped by the NP4Lite processor due to a bug with the NP4Lite firmware. You can use the following command to avoid this problem by preventing the NP4Lite processor from offloading ICMP sessions in IPsec VPN tunnels. This command is only available on FortiGate models with NP4Lite processors, such as the FortiGate/FortiWiFi-60D.

```
config system npu
  set process-icmp-by-host {disable | enable}
end
```

The option is disabled by default and all ICMP traffic in IPsec VPN tunnels is offloaded where possible. If you are noticing that ICMP packets in IPsec VPN tunnels are being dropped you can disable this option and have all ICMP traffic processed by the CPU and not offloaded to the NP4Lite.

NP6 IPv4 invalid checksum anomaly checking (387675)

The following new options have been added to NP6 processors to check for IPv4 checksum errors in IPv4, TCP, UDP, and ICMP packets.

```
config system np6
  edit {np6_0 | np6_1 | ...}
    config fp-anomaly
      set ipv4-csum-err {drop | trap-to-host}
      set tcp-csum-err {drop | trap-to-host}
      set udp-csum-err {drop | trap-to-host}
```

```
    set icmp-csum-err {drop | trap-to-host}
end
```

You can use the new options to either drop packets with checksum errors (the default) or send them to the CPU for processing. Normally you would want to drop these packets.

As well, note that when configuring NP6 anomaly protection, the separate options `config fp-anomaly-v4` and `config fp-anomaly-v6` have been combined under `config fp-anomaly`.

Stripping clear text padding and IPsec session ESP padding (416950)

In some situations, when clear text or ESP packets in IPsec sessions may have large amounts of layer 2 padding, the NP6 IPsec engine may not be able to process them and the session may be blocked.

If you notice dropped IPsec sessions, you could try using the following CLI options to cause the NP6 processor to strip clear text padding and ESP padding before sending the packets to the IPsec engine. With padding stripped, the session can be processed normally by the IPsec engine.

Use the following command to strip ESP padding:

```
config system npu
    set strip-esp-padding enable
    set strip-clear-text-padding enable
end
```

Stripping clear text and ESP padding are both disabled by default.

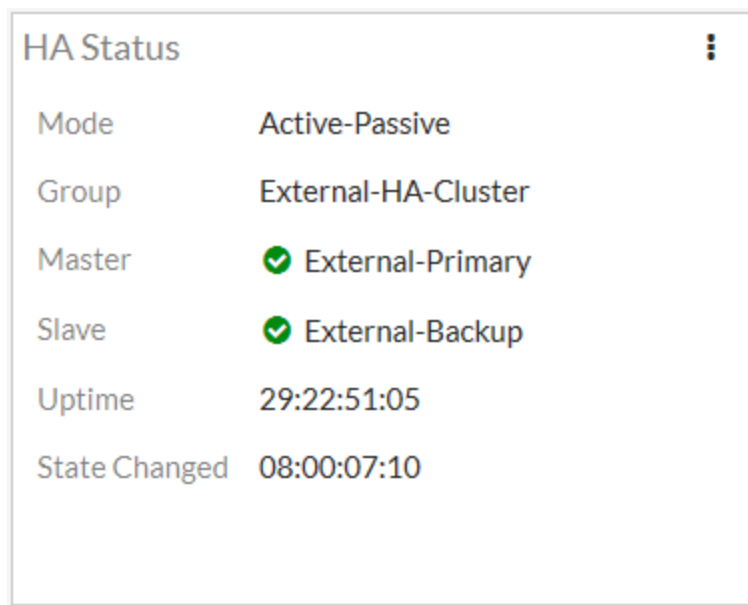
High Availability (5.6.1)

New High Availability features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

HA cluster Uptime on HA Status dashboard widget (412089)

The HA Status dashboard widget now displays how long the cluster has been operating (Uptime) and the time since the last failover occurred (State Changed). You can hover over the State Changed time to see the event that caused the state change.

You can also click on the HA Status dashboard widget to configure HA settings or to get a listing of the most recent HA events recorded by the cluster.



HA Status	
Mode	Active-Passive
Group	External-HA-Cluster
Master	✓ External-Primary
Slave	✓ External-Backup
Uptime	29:22:51:05
State Changed	08:00:07:10

FGSP with static (non-dialup) IPsec VPN tunnels and controlling IKE routing advertisement (402295)

Until FortiOS 5.6.1, the FortiGate Session Life Support Protocol (FGSP) only supported IPsec tunnel synchronization for dialup (or dynamic) IPsec VPN tunnels. FortiOS 5.6.1 now also supports IPsec tunnel synchronization for static IPsec VPN tunnels. No special FGSP or IPsec VPN configuration is required. You can configure static IPsec VPN tunnels normally and create a normal FGSP configuration.

An additional feature has been added to support some FGSP configurations that include IPsec VPNs. A new CLI option allows you to control whether IKE routes are synchronized to all units in the FGSP cluster.

```
config system cluster-sync
  edit 0
    set slave-add-ike-routes {enable | disable}
  end
```

Enable to synchronize IKE routes, disable if you do not need to synchronize IKE routes. Enabling routing synchronization is optional but doing so increases synchronization overhead and bandwidth usage. If you have

problems with IPsec VPN tunnel synchronization you may want to enable synchronizing routes otherwise you could leave it disabled to improve performance and save bandwidth.

VRRP support for synchronizing firewall VIPs and IP Pools (0397824)

FortiOS VRRP HA now supports failover of firewall VIPs and IP Pools when the status of a virtual router (VR) changes. This feature introduces a new proxy ARP setting to map VIP and IP Pool address ranges to each VR's Virtual MAC (VMAC). After failover, the IP Ranges added to the new primary VR will be routed to the new primary VR's VMAC.

Use the following command to add a proxy ARP address range and a single IP address to a VR added to a FortiGate's port5 interface. The address range and single IP address should match the address range or single IP for VIPs or IP Pools added to the port5 interface:

```
config system interface
  edit port5
    config vrrp
      edit 1
        config proxy-arp
          edit 1
            set ip 192.168.62.100-192.168.62.200
          next
          edit 2
            set ip 192.168.62.225
          end
        end
      end
    end
  end
```

High Availability (5.6)

New High Availability features added to FortiOS 5.6.

Multicast session failover (293751)

FGCP HA multicast session synchronization supports multicast session failover. To configure multicast session failover, use the following command to change the multicast TTL timer to a smaller value than the default. The recommended setting to support multicast session failover is 120 seconds (2 minutes). The default setting is 600 seconds (10 minutes).

```
config system ha
  set multicast-ttl 120
end
```

The multicast TTL timer controls how long to keep synchronized multicast routes on the backup unit (so they are present on the backup unit when it becomes the new primary unit after a failover). If you set the multicast TTL lower the multicast routes on the backup unit are refreshed more often so are more likely to be accurate. Reducing this time causes route synchronization to happen more often and could affect performance.

Performance improvement when shutting down or rebooting the primary unit (380279)

In previous versions of FortiOS, if you entered the `execute reboot` or `execute shutdown` command on the primary unit, a split brain configuration could develop for a few seconds while the primary unit was shutting down. This would happen because the heartbeat packets would stop being sent by the primary unit, while it was

still able to forward traffic. When the heartbeat packets stop the backup unit becomes the primary unit. The result was a split brain configuration with two primary units both capable of forwarding traffic.

This wouldn't happen all the time, but when it did network traffic would be delayed until the primary unit shut down completely. To resolve this issue, in FortiOS 5.6 when you run the `execute reboot` or `execute shutdown` command on the primary unit, the primary unit first becomes the backup unit before shutting down allowing the backup unit to become the new primary unit and avoiding the split brain scenario. This behavior only happens when you manually run the `execute reboot` or `execute shutdown` command from the primary unit.

VRRP failover process change (390938)

In a FortiOS 5.6 VRRP configuration, when the master cannot reach its next hop router (vrdst) it sends packets to the configured backup router(s). These packets set the priority of the master to be lower than the backup router (s). So a backup router now becomes the new master and takes over processing traffic.

Use the `vrdst-priority` option to set the lower priority that the master sends to the backup routers. The following CLI syntax resets the master's priority to 10 if it can no longer connect to its next hop router.

```
config system interface
edit port10
config vrrp
set vrip 10.31.101.200
set priority 255
set vrdst 10.10.10.1
set vrdst-priority 10
end
```

Display cluster up time and history (get system ha status command changes)(394745)

The `get system HA status` command now displays cluster uptime and history:

```
get system status
Version: FortiGate-5001D v5.6.0,build1413,170121 (interim)
...
Current HA mode: a-p, master
Cluster uptime: 3 days, 4 hours, 3 minutes, 46 seconds
...
```

In-band HA management Interface (401378)

You can use the following command to add a management interface to an individual cluster unit interface that is also connected to a network and processing traffic. The in-band management interface is an alternative to the reserved HA management interface feature and does not require reserving an interface just for management access.

```
config system interface
edit port1
set management-ip 172.20.121.155/24
end
```

The management IP address is accessible from the network that the cluster interface is connected to. This setting is not synchronized so each cluster unit can have their own management IP addresses. You can add a management IP address to each cluster unit interface. You can use the `execute ha manage` command to connect to individual cluster units.

The `management-ip` can be on the same subnet as the interface you are adding it to but cannot be on the same subnet as other cluster unit interfaces.

Up to four dedicated HA management interfaces supported (378127)

You can now add up to four dedicated HA management interfaces. Just like all FortiGate interfaces, these management interfaces must be on a different subnet from any other FortiGate interface. You can also configure a separate default gateway for each interface.

Use the following command to add two dedicated HA management interfaces:

```
config system ha
  set ha-mgmt-status enable
  config ha-mgmt-interfaces
    edit 1
      set interface port4
      set gateway 10.10.10.1
    next
    edit 2
      set interface port5
      set gateway 4.5.6.7
  end
```

FGSP support for automatic session sync after peer reboot (365851)

New options allow you to configure your FGSP cluster to resume sessions more smoothly after a failed FortiGate rejoins the cluster. In some cases when a failed FortiGate in the cluster comes back up it may begin processing sessions before the session table has been synchronized to it from the other FortiGate in the cluster. When this happens, the FortiGate may drop packets until the session synchronization is complete.

Shutting down interfaces during session synchronization

This new feature allows you to shut some interfaces down on the failed FortiGate when it is starting up so that it will not accept packets until session synchronization is complete. Then the interfaces are brought up and traffic can flow. While the interfaces are down, the FortiGate that had not failed keeps processing traffic.

Use the following command to select the interfaces to shutdown while waiting for session synchronization to complete:

```
config system cluster-sync
  edit 1
    set down-intfs-before-sess-sync port1 port2
  end
```

Heartbeat monitoring

If the FortiGate that was running fails before session synchronization is complete, the FortiGate that is restarting would not be able to complete session synchronization and would not turn on its shutdown interfaces. To prevent this from happening FGSP now includes heartbeat monitoring. Using heartbeat monitoring the FortiGate that is waiting for session synchronization to finish can detect that the other FortiGate is down and turn on its interfaces even if session synchronization is not complete. You can use the following command to change the heartbeat interval (`hb-interval`) and lost heartbeat threshold (`hp-lost-threshold`) to change heartbeat monitoring timing.

```
config system cluster-sync
```

```
edit 1
  set hb-interval 2
  set hb-lost-threshold 3
end
```

NTP over Dedicated HA management interfaces (397889)

If you set up dedicated management interfaces on each cluster unit, if NTP is enabled, the primary unit contacts an NTP server using the dedicated management interface. System time is then synchronized to the backup units through the HA heartbeat.

Example CLI:

```
config system interface
  edit port5
    set ip 172.16.79.46 255.255.255.0
  end

config system ha
  set group-name FGT-HA
  set mode a-p
  set ha-mgmt-status enable
  config ha-mgmt-interfaces
    edit 1
      set interface port5
      set gateway 172.16.79.1
    end
  set ha-direct enable
end

config system ntp
  set ntpsync enable
  set syncinterval 5
end
```

IPsec VPN (5.6.3)

New IPsec VPN features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

IPsec performance improvements for VM (439030)

In IPsec AES-GCM and AES-CBC-SHA mode, this feature leverages Intel AES-NI instructions to accelerate cipher and GCM operations, and uses Intel SSSE3 instructions to accelerate SHA1/SHA256 HMAC operations.

New entries to call Intel aesni directly:

- supported algorithms include: aesni, aesni-gcm, sha1/256/384/512-ssse3/avx/avx2
- some necessary additions, such as aes-gcm generic functions for non-aesni uses

This feature removes the old aes-gcm implementation using Linux Crypto API so that all the software crypto algorithms are under the Crypto_ftnt umbrella.

Two new diagnose commands have been introduced in this feature:

```
diagnose vpn ipsec driver    (shows software crypto drivers in use)
diagnose vpn ipsec cpu      (shows crypto CPU distribution)
```

Improved support for dynamic routing over dynamic IPsec interfaces (435152) (446498) (447569)

Solutions have been introduced to resolve the following issues:

- IPv6 RIP does not successfully exchange routes over ADVPN if the hub has 'set net-device disable'.
- BGP over an IPsec tunnel established by an IKE mode-cfg client connected to IKE mode-cfg server with 'set net-device disable' cannot establish.
- Multicast traffic does not flow over a 'set type dynamic' IPsec interface with 'set net-device disable'.

For 'set type dynamic' + 'set net-device disable' + 'set mode-cfg enable' + 'set add-route disable' then do `_not_` allocate a /30 (/126 for IPv6) as is done when 'set net-device enable', instead allocate a single IP address to the peer.

When the 'set type dynamic' tunnel negotiates, then add an IPsec peer route with the peer's allocated IP address pointing at the newly negotiated tunnel. Note this is na IPsec peer route not a regular route. A regular route is *not* added (unlike the case of 'set net-device enable').

'Config router static' / 'set device xxx' can now refer to a 'set type dynamic' IPsec interface. This allows the admin to define a static route covering the address range of the pool from which peer IP addresses will be allocated.

BMRK IPsec UDP performance for AES256GCM drops after AES-NI checked in (452164)

This new feature fixes the aesni-cbc errors and precomputed the per-SA constant elements for aesni-gcm.

1. aesni-cbc

When ECO 106922 was checked in, there was a known issue that the aesni-cbc driver wasn't working. The solution at that time was aesni plus generic cbc.

With this ECO, we fixed the errors in Intel's aesni-cbc driver so that we can fully leverage the aesni-cbc benefits. The aesni-cbc is faster than aesni plus generic cbc because:

- a. it can do cbc in one go with its 128-bits xmm registers.
- b. it can decrypt 4 blocks at the same time instead of one. It uses alternating AESDEC(Intel's aes instruction) on different blocks to speed up the calculations.

QA's tests show that with this, we can boost aes-cbc-sha1's throughput by 10+%.

2. AES fall-back function changed to Intel's x86_64 assembly from C generic function

When fpu is not available, aesni can't be used and must fall back to a generic function. The assembly aes function should be slightly faster than the C generic one.

This would also slight boost aes throughput for those that don't have aesni but have a x86_64 cpus.

3. aesni-gcm pre-computations

There are some elements in the aesni-gcm algo that maintain constant per-SA. This ECO moves these calculations to the prepare() function so that these calculations are only done once per-SA instead of per-packet.

QA's tests show that this helps to stabilize the 1500D aesni-gcm throughput and make it maintain above 1Gbps (packet size 1360).

4. Added counter reset function for diagnose commands:

```
diagnose vpn ipsec driver clear
diagnose vpn ipsec cpu clear
```

IPsec dial-up interface sharing (379973)

This feature makes it possible to use a single interface for all instances that spawn via a given phase1. Instead of creating an interface per instance, all traffic will run over the single interface and any routes that need creating will be created on that single interface.

A new CLI option "net-device [enable|disable]" is added in the phase1-interface command sets. The default is "disable" so that the new feature kicks in for all the new configurations. An upgrade feature will add a "set net-device enable" for all the existing configurations so that they will keep the old behavior. Please see the CLI Syntax section below for more details.

Under the new single-interface scheme, instead of relying on routing to guide traffic to the specific instance as currently happens, all traffic will flow to the specific device and IPsec will need to take care of locating the correct instance for outbound traffic. For this purpose, another new CLI option "tunnel-search" is created. The option is only available when the above "net-device" option is "disable".

There are two options for "tunnel-search", corresponding to the two ways to select the tunnel for outbound traffic. One is "selectors", meaning selecting a peer using the IPSec selectors (proxy-ids). The other is "nexthop" where all the peers use the same default selectors (0/0) while using some routing protocols such as BGP, OSPF, RIPvng, etc to resolve the routing. The default for "tunnel-search" is "selectors".

Syntax

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
  edit xxx
    set net-device [enable|disable] Enable to create a kernel device for every dialup instance
  next
end
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
```

```

edit xxx
    set net-device disable
    set tunnel-search [selectors|nexthop] Search for tunnel in selectors or using nexthops
next
end

```

IPsec VPN (5.6.1)

New IPsec VPN features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

Support for Brainpool curves specified in RFC 6954 for IKE (412795)

Added support for Brainpool curves specified in [RFC 6954](#) (originally RFC 5639) for IKE. Four new values are added for VPN phase1 and phase2 DH groups.

The allocated transform IDs are 27, 28, 29, 30:

- 27 - Brainpool 224-Bit Curve
- 28 - Brainpool 256-Bit Curve
- 29 - Brainpool 384-Bit Curve
- 30 - Brainpool 512-Bit Curve

Syntax

```

config vpn ipsec phase1/phase1-interface
    edit <name>
        set dhgrp {1 | 2 | 5 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30}
    next
end
config vpn ipsec phase2/phase2-interface
    edit <name>
        set dhgrp {1 | 2 | 5 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30}
    next
end

```

Removed "exchange-interface-ip" option from "vpn ipsec phase1" (411981)

The command `exchange-interface-ip` only works for interface-based IPsec VPN (`vpn ipsec phase1-interface`), and so it has been removed from policy-based IPsec VPN (`vpn ipsec phase1`).

IKEv2 ancillary RADIUS group authentication (406497)

This feature provides for the IDi information to be extracted from the IKEv2 AUTH exchange and sent to a RADIUS server, along with a fixed password configurable via CLI, to perform an additional group authentication step prior to tunnel establishment. The RADIUS server may return framed-IP-address, framed-ip-netmask, and dns-server attributes, which are then applied to the tunnel.

It should be noted, unlike Xauth or EAP, this feature does not perform individual user authentication, but rather treats all users on the gateway as a single group, and authenticates that group with RADIUS using a fixed password. This feature also works with RADIUS accounting, including the `phase1 acct-verify` option.

Syntax

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit <name>
set mode-cfg enable
set type dynamic
set ike-version 2
set group-authentication {enable | disable}
set group-authentication-secret <password>
next
end
```

IPsec mode-cfg can assign IPs from firewall address and sharing IP pools (393331)

This feature adds the ability for users to configure assign-IPs from firewall addresses/groups.

Previously, different policies accessing the same network needed to ensure that non-overlapping IP-ranges were assigned to policies to avoid the same IP address being assigned to multiple clients. With this feature, the address `name` is used to identify an IP pool and different policies can refer to the same IP pool to check for available IPs, thus simplifying the task of avoiding IP conflicts.

Syntax

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit <name>
set mode-cfg enable
set type dynamic
set assign-ip-from {range | dhcp | name}
set ipv4-name <name>
set ipv6-name <name>
next
end
```

Improve interface-based dynamic IPsec up/down time (379937)

This feature makes it possible to use a single interface for all instances that spawn via a given phase1. Instead of creating an interface per instance, all traffic will run over the single interface and any routes that need creating will be created on that single interface.

A new CLI option `net-device` is added in the `phase1-interface` command sets. The default is `disable` so that the new feature kicks in for all the new configurations. An upgrade feature will add a `set net-device enable` for all the existing configurations so that they will keep the old behavior.

Under the new single-interface scheme, instead of relying on routing to guide traffic to the specific instance, all traffic will flow to the specific device and IPsec will need to take care of locating the correct instance for outbound traffic. For this purpose, another new CLI option `tunnel-search` is created. The option is only available when the above `net-device` option is set to `disable`.

There are two options for `tunnel-search`, corresponding to the two ways to select the tunnel for outbound traffic. One is `selectors`, meaning selecting a peer using the IPsec selectors (proxy-ids). The other is `nexthop` where all the peers use the same default selectors (0/0) while using some routing protocols such as BGP, OSPF, RIPng, etc. to resolve the routing. The default for `tunnel-search` is `selectors`.

Syntax

```

config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
  edit <name>
    set net-device {enable | disable}
    set tunnel-search {selectors | nexthop}
  next
end

```

Hide psksecret option when peertype is dialup (415480)

In aggressive mode and IKEv2, when peertype is dialup, pre-shared key is per-user based. There is no need to configure the psksecret in the phase1 setup. Previously, if left unconfigured, CLI would output psksecret error and fail to create the phase1 profile.

To prevent psksecret length check running on the configuration end, the psksecret option will be hidden. Prior to Mantis 397712, the length check passed because it was incorrectly checking the length of encrypted password which is always 204 length long.

Peertype dialup option removed for main mode.

New enforce-ipsec option added to L2TP config (423988)

A new `enforce-ipsec` option is added in L2TP configuration to force the FortiGate L2TP server to accept only IPsec encrypted connections.

Syntax

```

config vpn l2tp
  set eip 50.0.0.100
  set sip 50.0.0.1
  set status enable
  set enforce-ipsec-interface {disable | enable}    (default = disable)
  set usrgrp <group_name>
end

```

IPsec VPN Wizard improvements (368069)

Previously, when using wan-load-balance (WLB) feature, and when configuring an IPsec tunnel with the wizard, the setting 'incoming interface' list does not contain the wan-load-balance nor the wan2 interface. Disabling the WLB permits the configuration.

The solution in 5.6.1 is as follows:

- (368069) The IPsec VPN wizard now allows users to select members of virtual-wan-link (VWL) as IPsec phase1-interface. Before saving, if the phase1 interface is a VWL member, then the Wizard automatically sets the virtual-wan-link as the destination interface in the L2TP policy.
- (246552) List VPN tunnels for VWL members if VWL is set as the destination interface in policy-based IPsec VPN.

IPsec manual key support removed from GUI (436041)

The majority of customers are not using policy-based IPsec today, and beyond that, very few are using manual key VPN. As a result, the IPsec manual key feature is removed from the GUI; the feature store option is removed as well.

Added GUI support for local-gw when configuring custom IPsec tunnels (423786)

Previously, the `local-gw` option was not available on the GUI when configuring a custom IPsec tunnel. This feature adds the `local-gw` setting to the IPsec VPN Edit dialog. The user is able to choose the primary or secondary IP address from the currently selected interface, or specify an ip address manually. Both `local-gw` and `local-gw6` are supported.

Moved the dn-format CLI option from phase1 config to vdom settings (435542)

Previous fix for `dn-format` didn't take into account that, at the time `isakmp_set_peer_identifier` is used, we don't have a connection and haven't matched our gateway yet, so we can't use that to determine the `dn-format` configuration setting.

The solution was to move the `dn-format` CLI option from phase1 config to vdom settings. It is renamed to `ike-dn-format`.

FGT IKE incorrect NAT detection causes ADVPN hub behind VIP to not generate shortcuts (416786)

When ADVPN NAT support was added, only spokes behind NAT was considered. No thought was given to a hub behind a VIP or the problems that occurred due to the way that FortiOS clients behind NAT enable NAT-T even when it is not required.

The solution in 5.6.1 is as follows:

- Moved shortcut determination out of the kernel and up to IKE. The shortcut message now contains the ID of both tunnels so that IKE can check the NAT condition of both.
- Added IKE debug to cover sending the initial shortcut query. The lack of this previously meant it could be awkward to determine if the offer had been converted into a query correctly.
- Added "nat:" output in `diag vpn ike gateway list` output to indicate whether this device or the peer is behind NAT.
- Tweaked the `diag vpn tunnel list` output so that the auto-discovery information now includes symbolic as well as numeric values, which makes it easier to see what type of auto-discovery was enabled.

IPsec VPN (5.6)

New IPsec VPN features added to FortiOS 5.6.

Improvement to stats crypto command output (403995)

The CLI command `get vpn ipsec stats crypto` now has a better format for the information it shows in differentiating between NP6 lite and SOC3 (CP). To further avoid confusion, all engine's encryption (encrypted/decrypted) and integrity (generated/validated) information is shown under the same heading, not separate headings.

Improved certificate key size control commands (397883)

Proxy will choose the same SSL key size as the HTTPS server. If the key size from the server is 512, the proxy will choose 1024. If the key size is bigger than 1024, the proxy will choose 2048.

As a result, the `firewall ssl-ssh-profile` commands `certname-rsa`, `certname-dsa`, and `certname-ecdsa` have been replaced with more specific key size control commands under `vpn certificate` setting.

CLI syntax

```
config vpn certificate setting
  set certname-rsa1024 <name>
  set certname-rsa2048 <name>
  set certname-dsa1024 <name>
  set certname-dsa2048 <name>
  set certname-ecdsa256 <name>
  set certname-ecdsa384 <name>
end
```

Support bit-based keys in IKE (397712)

As per FIPS-CC required standards, as well as [RFC 4306](#), IKE supports pre-shared secrets to be entered as both ASCII string values and as hexadecimal encoded values. This feature parses hex encoded input (indicated by the leading characters **0x**) and converts the input into binary data for storage.

With this change, the `psksecret` and `psksecret-remote` entries under the IPsec VPN CLI command `config vpn ipsec-phase1-interface` have been amended to differentiate user input as either ASCII string or hex encoded values.

IKEv2 asymmetric authentication (393073)

Support added for IKEv2 asymmetric authentication, allowing both sides of an authentication exchange to use different authentication methods, for example the initiator may be using a shared key, while the responder may have a public signature key and certificate.

A new command, `authmethod-remote`, has been added to `config vpn ipsec phase1-interface`.

For more detailed information on authentication of the IKE SA, see [RFC 5996 - Internet Key Exchange Protocol Version 2 \(IKEv2\)](#).

Allow mode-cfg with childless IKEv2 (391567)

An issue that prevented `childless-ike` from being enabled at the same time as `mode-cfg` has been resolved. Both options can now be enabled at once under `config vpn ipsec phase1-interface`.

IKEv2 Digital Signature Authentication support (389001)

FortiOS supports the use of Digital Signature authentication, which changes the format of the Authentication Data payload in order to support different signature methods.

Instead of just containing a raw signature value calculated as defined in the original IKE RFCs, the Auth Data now includes an ASN.1 formatted object that provides details on how the signature was calculated, such as the signature type, hash algorithm, and signature padding method.

For more detailed information on IKEv2 Digital Signature authentication, see [RFC 7427 - Signature Authentication in the Internet Key Exchange Version 2 \(IKEv2\)](#).

Passive static IPsec VPN (387913)

New commands have been added to `config vpn ipsec phase1-interface` to prevent initiating VPN connection. Static IPsec VPNs can be configured in tunnel mode, without initiating tunnel negotiation or rekey.

To allow a finer configuration of the tunnel, the `rekey` option is removed from `config system global` and added to `config vpn ipsec phase1-interface`.

CLI syntax

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
  edit <example>
    set rekey {enable | disable}
    set passive-mode {enable | disable}
    set passive-tunnel-interface {enable | disable}
  end
```

Phase 2 wizard simplified (387725)

Previously, for a site-to-site VPN, phase 2 selectors had their static routes created in the IPsec VPN wizard by adding IP addresses in string format. Now, since addresses and address groups are already created for these addresses, the address group can be used in the route directly. This means that the route can be modified simply by modifying the address/groups that were created when the VPN was initially created.

With this change, the VPN wizard will create less objects internally, and reduce complexity.

In addition, a blackhole route will be created by default with a higher distance-weight set than the default route. This is to prevent traffic from flowing out of another route if the VPN interface goes down. In these instances, the traffic will instead be silently discarded.

Unique IKE ID enforcement (383296)

All IPsec VPN peers now connect with unique IKE identifiers. To implement this, a new `phase1` CLI command has been added (`enforce-unique-id`) which, when enabled, requires all IPsec VPN clients to use a unique identifier when connecting.

CLI syntax

```
config vpn ipsec phase1
  edit <name>
    set enforce-unique-id {keep-new | keep-old | disable} Default is disable.
  next
end
```

Use `keep-new` to replace the old connection if an ID collision is detected on the gateway.

Use `keep-old` to reject the new connection if an ID collision is detected.

FortiView VPN tunnel map feature (382767)

A geospatial map has been added to FortiView to help visualize IPsec and SSL VPN connections to a FortiGate using Google Maps. Adds geographical-IP API service for resolving spatial locations from IP addresses.

This feature can be found under **FortiView > VPN**.

Childless IKEv2 initiation (381650)

As documented in [RFC 6023](#), when both sides support the feature, no child IPsec SA is brought up during the initial AUTH of the IKEv2 negotiation. Support for this mode is not actually negotiated, but the responder indicates support for it by including a `CHILDLESS_IKEV2_SUPPORTED` Notify in the initial `SA_INIT` reply. The initiator is then free to send its AUTH without any SA or TS payloads if it also supports this extension.

CLI syntax

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
  edit ike
    set ike-version 2
    set childless-ike enable
  next
end
```



Due to the way configuration payloads (`IKEV2_PAYLOAD_CONFIG`) are handled in the current code base, `mode-cfg` and `childless-ike` aren't allowed to be enabled at the same time. Processing config payloads for `mode-cfg` requires a child `ph2` handle to be created, but with `childless-ike` we completely avoid creating the child `ph2` in the first place which makes the two features incompatible. It may be possible to support both in the future, but a deeper rework of the config payload handling is required.

Allow peertype dialup for IKEv2 pre-shared key dynamic phase1 (378714)

Restored `peertype dialup` that was removed in a previous build (when IKEv2 PSK gateway re-validation was not yet supported).

If `peertype` is `dialup`, IKEv2 AUTH verify uses user password in the user group "usrgrp" of phase1. The "psksecret" in phase1 is ignored.

CLI syntax

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit "name"
    set type dynamic
    set interface "wan1"
    set ike-version 2
    set peertype dialup
    set usrgrp "local-group"
next
end
```

IPsec default phase1/phase1-interface peertype changed from 'any' to 'peer' (376340)

Previously, when `authmethod` was changed to `signature`, `peertype` automatically changed to `peer` and required a peer to be set. This change was done to try to provide a more secure initial configuration, while allowing the admin to set `peertype` back to `any` if that's what they really wanted. The default value was kept at `any` in the CLI. However, this caused problems with copy/pasting configurations and with FMG because if `peertype any` wasn't explicitly provided, the CLI was switched to `peertype peer`.

This patch changes the default `peertype` to `peer` now; `peertype any` is considered non-default and will be printed out on any config listing. Upgrade code has been written to ensure that any older build that was implicitly using `set peertype any` has this setting preserved.

IPsec GUI bug fixes (374326)

Accept type "Any peer ID" is available when creating IPsec tunnel with `authmethod`, pre-shared key, `ikev1` main mode/aggressive mode, and `ikev2`.

Support for IKEv2 Message Fragmentation (371241)

Added support for IKEv2 Message Fragmentation, as described in [RFC 7383](#).

Previously, when sending and IKE packets with IKEv1, the whole packet is sent once, and it is only fragmented if there is a retransmission. With IKEv2, because [RFC 7383](#) requires each fragment to be individually encrypted and authenticated, we would have to keep a copy of the unencrypted payloads around for each outgoing packet, in case the original single packet was never answered and we wanted to retry with fragments. So with this implementation, if the IKE payloads are greater than a configured threshold, the IKE packets are preemptively fragmented and encrypted.

CLI syntax

```
config vpn ipsec phase1-interface
edit ike
```

```
set ike-version 2
set fragmentation [enable|disable]
set fragmentation-mtu [500-16000]
next
end
```

IPsec monitoring pages now based on phase 1 proposals not phase 2 (304246)

The IPsec monitor, found under **Monitor > IPsec Monitor**, was in some instances showing random uptimes even if the tunnel was in fact down.

Tunnels are considered as "up" if at least one phase 2 selector is active. To avoid confusion, when a tunnel is down, **IPsec Monitor** will keep the **Phase 2 Selectors** column, but hide it by default and be replaced with **Phase 1** status column.

IPv6 (5.6.3)

New IPv6 features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

IPv6 RADIUS support (402437, 439773)

Added support for IPv6 RADIUS authentication. When configuring the FortiGate interface and the RADIUS server (under `config system interface` and `config user radius` respectively), the server IP address can be set as IPv6.

Added support for IPv6 Fortisandbox (424290) (447153)

FortiOS can now communicate with a FortiSandbox if the FortiSandbox has an IPv6 IP address.

IPv6 captive portal support (435435)

Captive portal now supports IPv6 addresses; works with remote RADIUS authentication and WiFi interfaces.

IPv6 (5.6)

New IPv6 features added to FortiOS 5.6.

FortiGate can reply to an anycast probe from the interface's unicast address (308872)

A new setting has been added within the CLI that can enable the FortiGate to reply to an anycast probe from the FortiGate's unicast IP address.

```
config system global
  set ipv6-allow-anycast-probe [enable|disable]
end
```

Enable: Enable probing of IPv6 address space through Anycast, by responding from the unicast IP address

Disable: Disable probing of IPv6 address space through Anycast

Secure Neighbor Discovery (355946)

Additional settings have been added to the configuration for interfaces with IPv6 so that they comply more closely to the parameters of RFC 3971

The context of the new settings is

```
config system interface
  edit <interface>
    config ipv6
```

The new options with IPv6 are:

ndmode

Neighbor discovery mode

```
set ndmode [basic | SEND]
```

Basic: Does not support SEND.

SEND-compatible: Supports SEND.

nd-cert

Neighbor discovery certificate

```
set nd-cert <string of Name of certificate to be used>
```

Example string: "Fortinet_Factory local"

n-security-level

Neighbor discovery security level

```
set nd-security-level <integer>
```

- Integer values from 0 - 7
- 0 = least secure
- 7 = most secure
- default = 0

nd-timestamp-delta -

Neighbor discovery timestamp delta value

```
set nd-timestamp-delta <integer of time in seconds>
```

- Range: 1 - 3600 sec
- default = 300

nd-timestamp-fuzz

Neighbor discovery timestamp fuzz factor

```
set nd-timestamp-fuzz <integer of time in seconds>
```

- Range: 1 - 60 sec
- default = 1

Additional related technical information

Kerenl

- Redirects ICMPv6 packets to user space if they require SEND options verification or build.

Radvd

- Verifies NS/RS SEND options including CGA, RSA, Timestamp, NONCE, etc. Daemon also creates neighbor cache for future timestamp checking, any entry gets flushed in 4 hours.
- Helps kernel build NA/RA SEND options including CGA, RSA, Timestamp, NONCE, etc. CGA parameters are kept in cache for each interface. CGA modifier is kept in CMDB.

Diagnose command for radvd

```
diag test application radvd
```

- Shows statistics
- Toggles message dump

Add multicast-PMTU to allow FGT to send ICMPv6 Too Big Message (373396)

New multicast-PMTU feature added to better comply with RFC 4443.

Normally, a "Packet Too Big" icmp6 message is sent by a routing device in response to a packet that it cannot forward because the packet is larger than the MTU of the outgoing link. For security reasons, these message may be disabled because attackers can use the information about a victim's ip address as the source address to do IP address spoofing.

In FortiOS's implementation of this function, a setting in the CLI, has been added to make this behavior optional on the FortiGate.

The syntax for the option is:

```
config router multicast6
  set multicast-PMTU [enable|disable]
end
```

Logging and Reporting (5.6.3)

New logging and reporting features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

Improve FortiAnalyzer storage usage on Log Settings page (409658)

This feature improves FortiAnalyzer storage usage information in log settings to include more detailed per-ADOM information as follows:

- (1) FAZ ADOM (Name)
Size / Used
- (2) Indexed Logs
Used / Available
Data Policy Days Configured / Actual
- (3) Compressed Logs
Used / Available
Data Policy Days Configured / Actual

Range change for maximum log age (440633)

The value range for "maximum-log-age" under "config log disk setting" has been limited to 0-3650.

New connect and disconnect event logs for FSSO server status change (446263)

Connect and disconnect event logs for FSSO server status changes have been added according to the following:

- When FSSO server status changes from disconnected to connected, record one connected event.
- When FSSO server status changes from connected to disconnected, record one disconnected event and send one FSSO server disconnected alert email when set.

These logs must be enabled in the CLI.

Syntax

```
config alertemail setting
    set FSSO-disconnect-logs
```

Security Fabric audit result logging to FortiGuard (452588)

The CLI now includes an option for the user to enable (by default) or disable FortiGuard security fabric audit result submission.

If enabled, every time a user runs the Security Fabric audit test on the FortiGate, the audit result will be sent to FortiGuard. When disabled, no audit data is sent to FortiGuard.

Security Audit categories have been reorganized and renamed to reflect the categories as they are in the security audit matrix.

Syntax

```
config system global
    set fortiguard-audit-result-submission [enable | disable]
end
```

Config log disk uploadtime units change (400999)

Instructions for upload time under "config log disk setting" has been clarified by adding the phrase 'daily upload' and mentioning that this is the Hour. The help text also now includes the acceptable range for more clarity.

Log field extension policy-name and meta-field (455441)

An option to include the policy name field has been added to traffic logs (`log-policy-name`). Likewise, an option to add a meta-field tag to all logs has also been added (`custom-field` and `custom-log-fields`; see below). This meta-field could be used for identifying the fortigate sending the logs, for example.

These options can only be enabled in the CLI.

Syntax

```
config log setting
    set log-policy-name [enable | disable]
end
config log custom-field
    edit "aaa"
        set name "fieldda"
        set value "111"
    next
end
config log setting
    set custom-log-fields "aaa"
end
```

Rename logtime to eventtime (454445)

The "logtime" field in logs has been renamed to "eventtime" to avoid confusion. The logtime is the timestamp that miglogd receives the message.

Logging and Reporting (5.6.1)

New logging and reporting features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

Usability Updates to Reports Page (383684)

The **Reports** page has been updated in 5.6.1, to include both FortiCloud and Local Reports in a single location. Configuring of report schedules is also available on this page. The page will display whichever format is enabled, or allow switching between both if both Local and FortiCloud are in use.

Interface Categories (srcintfrole, etc) added to log data (434188)

In 5.6, logs and FortiView both sort log traffic into two interface categories: "Traffic from LAN/DMZ", and "Traffic from WAN." For greater compatibility and troubleshooting of FortiAnalyzer and FortiCloud setups, interface category fields that expose this information have been added to general log data in 5.6.1: `srcintfrole` and `dstintfrole` for better backend control and monitoring.

Individual FAZ log settings for SLBC Cluster Blades (382942/424076)

Individual SLBC Cluster Blades can now be enabled to have its own specific FortiAnalyzer log settings, rather than auto-syncing with all other blades in the cluster. This allows for multi-FAZ setups and collector-analyzer architectures, to deal with high logging volume. Entries in the command `config system object-nsync` determine which settings are not synced from the blade. Settings are available to specify VDOMs that will or will not sync.

Logging and Reporting (5.6)

New logging and reporting features added to FortiOS 5.6.

All string values in log messages are enclosed in double quotes (399871)

In previous versions, some string log fields have double quotes and some do not. FortiOS 5.6 adds double-quotes to all string fields in all log messages.

Some example log messages:

```
date=2017-01-27 time=10:46:26 logid="0001000014" type="traffic"
subtype="local" level="notice" vd="vd1" srcip=172.16.200.1 srcport=17856
srcintf=unknown-0 dstip=192.168.100.206 dstport=53 dstintf="port1"
sessionid=1461 proto=17 action="accept" policyid=0 dstcountry="Reserved"
srccountry="Reserved" trandisp="noop" service="DNS" app="DNS" duration=180
sentbyte=92 rcvbyte=0 sentpkt=1 rcvpkt=0 appcat="unscanned"

date=2017-01-27 time=10:36:34 logid="0107045071" type="event"
subtype="endpoint" level="notice" vd="vd1" logdesc="FortiClient Vulnerability
Scan" scantime=1467851105 fctuid="A8BA0B12DA694E47BA4ADF24F8358E2F"
user="test-user" srcip=192.168.25.26 srcname="test-pc"
srcmac="01:02:03:04:05:06" devtype="Windows PC" vulnid=25894
vulnname="Security Vulnerability CVE-2016-0636 in Oracle JDK"
vulncat="Applications" severity="critical" cveid="CVE-2016-0636"
vendorurl="http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/topics/security/alert-cve-2016-
0636-2949497.html" msg="Endpoint Vulnerability Scan."
```

Client and server certificates included in Application control log messages (406203)

When SSL/TLS traffic triggers an application control signature, the application control log messages now include information about the signatures used by the session. This includes the client certificate issuer, the name in the server certificate, and the server certificate issuer.

DNS Logging (401757)

FortiOS logging now includes the Detailed DNS log message type. DNS events were previously recorded as event logs. In FortiOS 5.6 DNS log messages are a new category that also includes more DNS log messages to provide additional detail about DNS activity through the FortiGate. You can enable DNS logging from the CLI using the following command (shown in this example for memory logging):

```
config log memory filter
  set dns enable
end
```

DNS log messages include details of each DNS query and response. DNS log messages are recorded for all DNS traffic though the FortiGate and originated by the FortiGate.

The detailed DNS logs can be used for low-impact security investigation. Most network activity involves DNS activity of some kinds. Analyzing DNS logs can provide a lot of details about the activity on your network without using flow or proxy-based resource intensive techniques.

Added Policy Comment logging option (387865)

As an alternative to custom log fields, the functionality has been added to log a policy's comment field in all traffic log files that use that policy, in order to sort/isolate logs effectively with larger deployments and VDOMs. The feature is disabled by default.

```
config log setting
  set log policy comment [enable/disable]
```

FortiAnalyzer encryption option name change (399191)

For clarity, and because the default options for `config log fortianalyzer setting` have now changed, the option `default` has now been changed to `high-medium` in the following CLI commands:

```
config log fortianalyzer setting
  set enc-algorithm [high/high-medium/low]
config log fortianalyzer override-setting
  set enc-algorithm [high/high-medium/low]
config log fortiguard setting
  set enc-algorithm [high/high-medium/low]
config log fortiguard override-setting
  set enc-algorithm [high/high-medium/low]
```

Maximum values changes

Maximum values changes in FortiOS 5.6.3:

- Merged FGT 90E/91E into trunk (386658).
- Merged FGT 3960E/3980E into 5.6 and trunk (435854).

Maximum values changes in FortiOS 5.6.1:

- The maximum number of SSIDs (CLI command `config wireless-controller vap`) for FortiGate models 600C, 600D, 800C, 800D, and 900D increased from 356 to 512 (414202).
- The maximum number DLP sensors (CLI command `config dlp sensor / config filter`) for models 1000C, 1000D, 1200D, 1500D, 1500DT, 3240C, and 3600C decreased from 10,000 to 3,000. (371270)
- The maximum number DLP sensors (CLI command `config dlp sensor / config filter`) for models 3000D, 3100D, 3200D, 3700D, 3700DX, 3800D, 3810D, 3815D, 5001C, and 5001D decreased from 50,000 to 4,000. (371270)

Maximum values changes in FortiOS 5.6:

- The maximum number of wireless controller QoS Profiles is per VDOM (388070).

Modem (5.6.1)

New modem features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

New modem features (422266)

New FortiOS 5.6.1 modem features include:

- The ability to edit wireless profiles stored on EM7x modems from FortiOS.
- GPS support.
- MIB for internal LTE modems.
- Syslog messages for internal LTE modems.
- More status information displayed by the `diagnose sys lte-modem` command
- New modem-related MIB entities.

`config system lte-modem` command changes

The `mode`, `interface`, and `holddown-timer` options of the `config system lte-modem` command have been removed. These options are no longer needed. Instead, use SD-WAN for redundant interfaces.

The `config system lte-modem` command includes the following options

`status` Enable/disable USB LTE/WIMAX device.

`extra-init` Extra initialization string to USB LTE/WIMAX device.

`manual-handover` Enable/Disable manual handover from 3G to LTE network. If enabled, the FortiGate switches the modem firmware to LTE mode if the modem itself fails to do so after 5 loops.

force-wireless-profile Force the modem to use the configured wireless profile index (1 - 16), 0 if don't force. If your FortiGate includes an LTE modem or if an LTE modem is connected to it you can use the `execute lte-modem` command to list the LTE modem profiles. Use this command to select one of these wireless profiles.

Wireless profiles contain detailed LTE modem data session settings. In each modem, a maximum of 16 wireless profiles can be stored, any data connections are initiated using settings from one of the stored wireless profiles. To make a data connection, at least one profile must be defined. Here is a sample wireless profile table stored in one of the internal modems:

```
FG30EN3U15000025 # execute lte-modem wireless-profile list
```

ID	Type	Name	APN	PDP_Type	Authen	Username
*1	0	profile1	vzwims	3	0	
2	0	profile2	vzwadmin	3	0	
3	0	profile3	VZWINTERNET	3	0	
4	0	profile4	vzwapp	3	0	
5	0	profile5	vzw800	3	0	
9	0	profile9	vzwims	2	0	
10	0	profile10	vzwadmin	0	0	
11	0	profile11	VZWINTERNET	0	0	
12	0	profile12	vzwapp	3	0	
13	0	profile13		0	0	

Profile Type:

```
0 ==> QMI_WDS_PROFILE_TYPE_3GPP
1 ==> QMI_WDS_PROFILE_TYPE_3GPP2
* ==> Default 3GPP Profile, # ==> Default 3GPP2 Profile
```

Profile PDP Type:

```
0 ==> QMI_WDS_PDP_TYPE_IPV4
1 ==> QMI_WDS_PDP_TYPE_PPP
2 ==> QMI_WDS_PDP_TYPE_IPV6
3 ==> QMI_WDS_PDP_TYPE_IPV4_OR_IPV6
```

Authentication:

```
0 ==> QMI_WDS_AUTHENTICATION_NONE
1 ==> QMI_WDS_AUTHENTICATION_PAP
2 ==> QMI_WDS_AUTHENTICATION_CHAP
3 ==> QMI_WDS_AUTHENTICATION_PAP|QMI_WDS_AUTHENTICATION_CHAP
```

authtype Authentication type for PDP-IP packet data calls.

apn Log in APN string for PDP-IP packet data calls.

modem-port Modem port index (0 - 20).

network-type Set wireless network.

auto-connect Enable/disable Modem auto connect.

gpsd-enabled Enable/disable GPS daemon.

data-usage-tracking Enable/disable data usage tracking.

gps-port Modem port index (0 - 20). Specify the index for GPS port, by default it is set to 255 which means to use the system default.

execute lte-modem command changes

The following options are available for the `execute lte-modem` command:

`cold-reboot` Cold reboot LTE Modem, which means power off the internal modem and power it on again after 1 second.

`get-modem-firmware` `get-modem-firmware`

`get-pri-firmware` `get-pri-firmware`

`power-off` Power off LTE Modem.

`power-on` Power on LTE Modem.

`purge-billing-data` Purge all existing LTE Modem billing data.

`reboot` Warm reboot LTE Modem.

`set-operation-mode` Set LTE Modem operation mode to online or offline.

`wireless-profile` `wireless-profile`

`cold-reboot`, `power-off`, `power-on`, `set-operation-mode`, and `wireless-profile` are new in FortiOS 5.6.1.

New execute lte-modem wireless-profile command

The following options are available for the `execute lte-modem wireless-profile` command:

`create` Create a wireless profile. You use the `create` command to create an LTE modem profile by providing a name and supplying settings for the profile. The command syntax is:

```
execute lte-modem wireless-profile create <name> <type> <pdp-type> <apn-name> <auth-type>
[<user> <password>]
```

`<name>` Wireless profile name of 1 to 16 characters.

`<type>` Wireless profile type:

- 0 for 3GPP profiles.
- 1 for 3GPP2 profiles.

`<pdp-type>` Wireless profile PDP type.

- 0 for IPv4
- 1 for PPP
- 2 for IPv6
- 3 for IPv4v6

`<apn-name>` Wireless profile APN name, 0 to 32 characters.

`<auth-type>` Wireless profile authentication type.

- 0 for no authentication.
- 1 for PAP
- 2 for CHAP
- 3 for PAP and CHAP

[<user> <password>] Wireless profile user name and password (1 to 32 characters each). Not required if <auth-type> is 0.

For example, use the following command to create an LTE modem 3GPP IPv4 profile named myprofile6. This profile uses the APN profile named p6apn that uses PAP and CHAP authentication.

```
execute lte-modem wireless-profile create myprofile 0 0 myapn 3 myname mypasswd
```

delete <profile-number> Delete a wireless profile from the Modem. Specify profile ID of the profile to delete.

list List all the wireless profiles stored in the Modem. If the modem is busy the list may not display. If this happens just repeat the command. It may take a few attempts.

modify Modify a wireless profile using the same settings as the create command except the first option is the profile ID. You can find the profile ID for each profile by listing the profiles using the `execute lte-modem wireless-profile list` command. For example, to modify the profile created above to change it to an IPv4v6 profile, change the APN profile to yourapn, and set the authentication type to PAP enter the following command (assuming the profile ID is 6):

```
execute lte-modem wireless-profile modify 6 myprofile 0 3 yourapn 1 myname mypasswd
```

test Test wireless profiles.

Static mode for wwan interface removed (440865)

When configuring the wireless modem wwan interface from the CLI the `mode` can only be set to DHCP. Static addressing for the wwan interface is not supported so the `static` option has been removed.

Networking (5.6.3)

New networking features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

Static Route GUI page updates (268344)

Updates have been made to the **New Static Route/Edit Static Route** page (under **Network > Static Routes**) so as to avoid the device interface being selected first before the gateway. The admin can now specify the gateway first, then the device interface will populate automatically based on the gateway. In addition, if the gateway is not in the same subnet as the selected interface, a warning message will appear.

Advanced Routing GUI updates (413433, 445075)

Fixed an issue where an interface was not able to be deleted in the GUI under **Network > Multicast > Multicast Routing**.

VXLAN interfaces can be attached to loopback interfaces (436773)

Support has been added for VXLAN unicast devices to be "binded" to the loopback interface as its underlying interface:

- The IP address of the loopback interface would be taken as the source IP for its outgoing VXLAN packets, so that the peer knows where to reply.
- Among parameters passing to kernel, the ifindex of the loopback interface is not actually passed down to kernel, so that the kernel can freely choose the physical outgoing interface.

VXLAN traffic can be routed across multiple physical links, providing resistance to single points of failure.

New option to configure DHCP renew time (440923)

Support has been added to allow you to set a minimum DHCP renew time in seconds (under `config system interface`). Note that this entry is only available when `mode` is set to `dhcp`.

Syntax

```
config system interface
  edit {name}
    set dhcp-renew-time <seconds>
  next
end
```

Set the DHCP renew time range between 300-604800 (or five minutes to seven days). You can use the renew time provided by the server by setting this entry to 0.

Show/add IPv6 address for CLI "get" under interface and CLI "fnsysctl/sysctl ifconfig interface_id" (442988, 230480)

Client IPv6 DHCP addresses were only available to view in the CLI by using `diagnose ipv6 address list`, but are also now available by entering `get` in the interface (under `config system interface`).

Similarly, static IPv6 addresses were available to view under `diagnose ipv6 address list` and by entering `get` under the interface, but are also now available by entering `fnsysctl/sysctl ifconfig interface_id`.

DHCP Option 82 on Fortigate DHCP relay - RFC3046 (451456)

Support has been added to enable or disable DHCP relay option 82 (under `config system interface`), as referenced in [RFC3046](#): "Overall adding of the DHCP relay agent option SHOULD be configurable, and SHOULD be disabled by default".

Syntax

```
config system interface
  edit {name}
    set dhcp-relay-agent-option {enable | disable}
  next
end
```

Networking (5.6.1)

New networking features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

IPv6 Router Advertisement options for DNS enhanced with recursive DNS server option (399406)

This feature is based on [RFC 6106](#) and it adds the ability to obtain DNS search list options from upstream DHCPv6 servers and the ability to send them out through either Router Advertisement or FortiGate's DHCP server.

FortiOS 5.6 supported the following:

To get the information from the upstream ISP server:

```
config system interface
  edit wan1
    config ipv6
      set dhcp6-prefix-delegation enable
    next
  next
end
```

To use Routing Advertisement to send the DNS search list:

```
config system interface
  edit port 1
    config IPv6
```

```

        set ip6-address 2001:10::/64
        set ip6-mode static
        set ip6-send-adv enable
        config ip6-delegated-prefix-list
        edit 1
            set upstream-interface WAN
            set subnet 0:0:0:11::/64
            set autonomous-flag enable
            set onlink-flag enable
        next
    next
end
end

```

To use DHCPv6 server to send DNS search list:

```

config system dhcp6 server
    edit 1
        set interface port2
        set upstream-interface WAN
        set ip-mode delegated
        set dns-service delegated
        set dns-search-list delegated // this is a new command
        set subnet 0:0:0:12::/64
    next
end

```

In FortiOS 5.6.1 this feature has been enhanced to include the recursive DNS server option that sends the IPv6 recursive DNS server option to downstream clients with static prefix RA.

The new options include `rdnss` and `dnssl` in the following syntax:

```

config system interface
    edit port1
        config ipv6
            config ip6-prefix-list
                edit 2001:db8::/64
                    set autonomous-flag enable
                    set onlink-flag enable
                    set rdnss 2001:1470:8000::66 2001:1470:8000::72
                    set dnssl fortinet.com fortinet.ca
                end
            end
        end
    end

```

Temporarily mask interface failure (435426)

In some situations during normal operation, attached network equipment may cause a FortiGate interface to appear to have disconnected from the network. And in some cases you may not want the FortiGate interface to detect and respond to the apparent interruption. For example, when Lawful Intercept (LI) devices are inserted/removed from the network path using a switch mechanism the signal is entirely interrupted. That interruption is seen by the FortiGate as an interface failure.

When the network path is interrupted, the FortiGate normally declares that the interface is down. All services using the interface are notified and act accordingly.

This new feature allows the FortiGate interface to temporarily delay detecting that the interface is down. If the connection is restored during the delay period, the FortiGate ignores the interface down condition and services using the interface resume without apparent interruption.




Use the following command to enable and configure the down time for a FortiGate interface:

```
config system interface
  edit port1
    set disconnect-threshold <delay>
  end
```

<delay> is the time to wait before sending a notification that this interface is down or disconnected (0 - 1000 ms, default = 0).

Policy Routes now appear on the routing monitor (411841)

You can go to **Monitor > Routing Monitor** and select Policy to view the active policy routes on your FortiGate.

<div><div> Refresh</div><div> Edit Route</div></div>		Static & Dynamic					Policy
IP Version	From	Source	To	Destination	Gateway IP	Protocol	Action
4	 mgmt1	10.10.10.0/255.255.255.0	Any	0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0	172.20.121.2	Any	 Route

Control how the system behaves during a routing change (408971)

FortiOS allows you to dynamically make routing changes while the FortiGate unit is processing traffic. Routing changes that affect the routing used for current sessions may affect how the FortiGate continues to process the session after the routing change has been made.

Using the following command you can control whether FortiOS keeps (preserves) the routing for the sessions that are using the route or causes the changed routing table to be applied to active sessions, possibly causing their destinations to change.

```
config system interface
  edit port2
    set preserve-session-route {enable | disable}
  end
```

If enabled (the default), all sessions passing through port2 are allowed to finish without being affected by the routing changes. If disabled, when a route changes the new routing table is applied to the active sessions through port2 which may cause their destinations to change.

Networking (5.6)

New networking features added to FortiOS 5.6.

New command to get transceiver signal strength (205138)

On most FortiGate models with SFP/SFP+ interfaces you can use the following command to display information about the status of the transceivers installed in the SFP/SFP+ interfaces of the FortiGate.

The command output lists all of SFP/SFP+ interfaces and if they include a transceiver the output displays information about it. The command output also includes details about transceiver operation that can be used to diagnose transmission problems.

```
get system interface transceiver
```

```
...
```

```
Interface port14 - Transceiver is not detected.
```

```
Interface port15 - SFP/SFP+
```

```
Vendor Name : FIBERXON INC.
Part No. : FTM-8012C-SLG
Serial No. : 101680071708917
```

```
Interface port16 - SFP/SFP+
```

```
Vendor Name : FINISAR CORP.
Part No. : FCLF-8521-3
Serial No. : PS62ENQ
```

SFP/SFP+	Temperature	Voltage	Optical	Optical	Optical
Interface	(Celsius)	(Volts)	Tx Bias	Tx Power	Rx Power
			(mA)	(dBm)	(dBm)
port15	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
port16	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

++ : high alarm, + : high warning, - : low warning, -- : low alarm, ? : suspect.

New BGP local-AS support (307530)

Use the following command to configure BGP local-AS support:

```
config router bgp
config neighbor
edit "neighbor"
...
set local-as 300
set local-as-no-prepend disable|enable
set local-as-replace-as disable|enable
end
```

Enable `local-as-no-prepend` if you do not want to prepend local-as to incoming updates.

Enable `local-as-replace-as` to replace a real AS with local AS in outgoing updates.

Interface setting removed from SNMP community (310665)

The SNMP GUI has been cleaned up by removing the **Interface** setting.

RPF checks can be removed from the state evaluation process (311005)

You can remove stateful firewall RPF state checks without fully enabling asymmetric routing. State checks can be disabled on specific interfaces. The following command shows how to disable state checks for traffic received by the wan1 interface.



Disabling state checks makes a FortiGate unit less secure and should only be done with caution.

```
config system interface
edit wan1
set src-check disable
```

end

BGP graceful-restart-end-on-timer, stale-route, and linkdown-failover options (374140)

If `graceful-end-on-timer` is enabled, the BGP graceful restart process will be stopped upon expiration of the restart timer only.

If `linkdown-failover` is enabled for a BGP neighbor, the neighbor will be down when the outgoing interface is down.

If `stale-route` is enabled for a BGP neighbor, the route learned from the neighbor will be kept for the `graceful-stalepath-time` after the neighbor is down due to hold timer expiration or TCP connection failure.

```
config router bgp
  set graceful-end-on-timer disable|enable
  config neighbor
    edit 192.168.1.1
      set linkdown-failover disable|enable
      set stale-route disable|enable
```

`graceful-end-on-timer` stops BGP graceful restart process on timer only.

`linkdown-failover` and `stale-route` are options to bring down BGP neighbors upon link down and to keep routes for a period after the neighbor is down.

FQDNs can be destination addresses in static routes (376200)

FQDN firewall addresses can now be used as destination addresses in a static route.

From the GUI, to add a FQDN firewall address (or any other supported type of firewall address) to a static route in the firewall address configuration you must enable the **Static Route Configuration** option. Then when configuring the static route set **Destination** to **Named Address**.

From the CLI, first configure the firewall FQDN address:

```
config firewall address
  edit 'Fortinet-Documentation-Website'
    set type fqdn
    set fqdn docs.fortinet.com
    set allow-routing enable
  end
```

Then add the FQDN address to a static route.

```
config router static
  edit 0
    set dstaddr Fortinet-Documentation-Website
    ...
  end
```

Priority for Blackhole routes (378232)

You can now add a priority to a blackhole route to change its position relative to kernel routes in the routing table. Use the following command to add a blackhole route with a priority:

```
config router static
  edit 23
    set blackhole enable
```

```
    set priority 200
end
```

New DDNS refresh interval (383994)

A new DDNS option has been added to configure the FortiGate to refresh DDNS IP addresses by periodically checking the configured DDNS server.

```
config system ddns
  edit 1
    set ddns-server FortiGuardDDNS
    set use-public-ip enable
    set update-interval seconds
  end
```

The default `update-interval` is 300 seconds and the range is 60 to 2592000 seconds.

Support IPv6 blackhole routes on GUI (388599)

IPv6 blackhole routes are now supported from GUI, go to **Network > Static Routes** and select **Create New > IPv6 Route**.

Choose **Blackhole** for **Device** field.

New Static Route

Destination IP/Mask	<input type="text" value="::/0"/>
Device	<input type="radio"/> Blackhole
Administrative Distance ⓘ	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Comments	<input type="text" value=""/>
Status	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled

OK Cancel

SSL-VPN can use a WAN link load balancing interface (396236)

Virtual-wan-link interface can now be set as a destination interface in SSLVPN policy.

Also SSL-VPN interface can now be set as a source interface for WAN LLB.

DDNS support for noip.com (399126)

Noip.com, and provider for Dynamic DNS has been added as a supported option for a `ddns-server`.

CLI

```
config system ddns
  edit <ddns_ip>
    set ddns-server
```


[dyndns.org|dyns.net|ods.org|tzo.com|vavic.com|dipdns.net|now.net.cn||dhs.org|ea
sydns.com|genericDDNS|FortiGuardDDNS|noip.com]

IPv6 Router Advertisement options for DNS (399406)

This feature is based on [RFC 6106](#) and it adds the ability to obtain DNS search list options from upstream DHCPv6 servers and the ability to send them out through either Router Advertisement or FortiGate's DHCP server.

Configuration example:

To get the information from the upstream ISP server:

```
config system interface
  edit wan1
    config ipv6
      set dhcp6-prefix-delegation enable
    next
  next
end
```

To use Routing Advertisement to send the DNS search list:

```
config system interface
  edit port 1
    config IPv6
      set ip6-address 2001:10::/64
      set ip6-mode static
      set ip6-send-adv enable
      config ip6-delegated-prefix-list
        edit 1
          set upstream-interface WAN
          set subnet 0:0:0:11::/64
          set autonomous-flag enable
          set onlink-flag enable
        next
      next
    end
  end
```

To use DHCPv6 server to send DNS search list:

```
config system dhcp6 server
  edit 1
    set interface port2
    set upstream-interface WAN
    set ip-mode delegated
    set dns-service delegated
    set dns-search-list delegated // this is a new command
    set subnet 0:0:0:12::/64
  next
end
```

WAN LLB to SD-WAN on GUI (403102)

To be more consistent with current terminology, the term **WAN LLB** has been changed in the GUI to the more recognizable **SD-WAN**.

New RFCs

The following RFCs are now supported by FortiOS 5.6.3 or the support for these RFCs has been enhanced in FortiOS 5.6.3:

- [RFC 7627](#) Transport Layer Security (TLS) Session Hash and Extended Master Secret Extension (443870)

The following RFCs are now supported by FortiOS 5.6.1 or the support for these RFCs has been enhanced in FortiOS 5.6.1:

- [RFC 6954](#) Using the Elliptic Curve Cryptography (ECC) Brainpool Curves for the Internet Key Exchange Protocol Version 2 (IKEv2) (412795)
- [RFC 6106](#) IPv6 Router Advertisement Options for DNS Configuration (399406)
- [RFC 4787](#) Network Address Translation (NAT) Behavioral Requirements for Unicast UDP (408875)
- Improved enforced secure-renegotiation checks support for [RFC 5746](#) Transport Layer Security (TLS) Renegotiation Indication Extension (422133)
- [RFC 7627](#) Transport Layer Security (TLS) Session Hash and Extended Master Secret Extension (422133)

The following RFCs are now supported by FortiOS 5.6 or the support for these RFCs has been enhanced in FortiOS 5.6:

- [RFC 7427](#) Signature Authentication in the Internet Key Exchange Version 2 (IKEv2) (389001)
- [RFC 7348](#) Virtual eXtensible Local Area Network (VXLAN) or VTEP (289354)
- [RFC 5996](#) (section 2.15) IKEv2 asymmetric authentication (393073)
- [RFC 6106](#) IPv6 Router Advertisement Options for DNS (399406)
- [RFC 7383](#) Internet Key Exchange Protocol Version 2 (IKEv2) Message Fragmentation (371241)
- [RFC 3971](#) IPv6 Secure Neighbor Discovery (SEND) (355946)
- [RFC 6023](#) Childless IKEv2 Initiation (381650)

Sandbox Integration (5.6.1)

New sandbox integration features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

New file extension lists for determining which file types to send to FortiSandbox (379326)

This feature introduces two new file extension lists:

- File extensions to submit to FortiSandbox even though the AV engine says they are unsupported.
- File extensions to exclude from submitting to FortiSandbox even though the AV engine says they are supported.

These lists are configured on the FortiSandbox, not the FortiGate, and are dynamically loaded on the FortiGate via quarantine.



These lists are only file extensions and not file types detected by the AV engine using magic bytes. Pattern matching is done on the extension of the filename only.

Syntax

```
diag sys scanunit reload-fsa-ext
```

FortiSandbox integration with AntiVirus in quick mode (436380)

FortiSandbox options in an AntiVirus Security Profile in quick scanning mode can now be enabled with CLI commands.

CLI syntax

```
config antivirus profile
  edit default
    set ftgd-analytics disable/everything
    set analytics-max-upload 10
    set analytics-wl-filetype 0
    set analytics-bl-filetype 0
    set analytics-db enable/disable
    set scan-mode quick
  end
```

Security Fabric (5.6.3)

New Security Fabric features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

Security Profiles (5.6.3)

New security profile features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

Added multiple ports and port range support in the explicit ftp/web proxy (402775)

Added multiple ports and port range support in the explicit ftp/web proxy:

- added new monitor api endpoint for checking whether a list of TCP port ranges is being used, sample usage:
/api/v2/monitor/system/check-port-availability?port_ranges=[{"start":8080,"end":8080},{"start":400,"end":600}, {"start":1,"end":200}]&service=webproxy
- added GUI support for port ranges in web-proxy and ftp-proxy settings

Block access to unsupported FortiClient endpoints (457695)

You can use the following command to deny registration of unsupported FortiClients endpoints. An unsupported FortiClient endpoint means the endpoint is running FortiClient but for some reason not all of the criteria are available to identify the endpoint, or the endpoint may be running an unsupported version of FortiClient. Information required that is not available could include the endpoint's IP address or MAC address is not visible.

```
config endpoint-control setting
    set forticlient-dereg-unsupported-client {enable | disable}
end
```

Exempt list fix (381762)

The FortiClient Monitor page now shows exempt device types, as opposed to just the device category. FortiOS can now differentiate the three cases both from backend and GUI.

Backend changes

Differentiate the three cases:

- exempt by custom device
- exempt by device category
- exempt by device group

GUI changes

1. Monitor > FortiClient Monitor page:

- show device exempt reasons as any combination of device, device category, device group, source address.

2. Update REST monitor api

- (URI: /api/v2/monitor/user/device/select?compliance_visibility=true)
- update "exempt_reason" field from string to array of strings in json result

Security Profiles (5.6.1)

New security profile features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

FortiGuard WAN IP blacklist service is now online (404859)

The Fortiguard WAN IP blacklist service was not online in FortiOS 5.6.0. In FortiOS 5.6.1, a notification appears on the **Dashboard** when WAN IP is blacklisted. Clicking on the notification brings up the blacklist details.

Application Control GUI improvements (279956)

An **All Categories** button on the **Security Profiles > Application Control** page makes it easier to apply an action (Monitor, Allow, Block, Quarantine) to all categories at once.

Note that the **All Categories** selector goes blank when any of the actions to be applied to individual categories is manually changed to something different than what was selected for all the categories. The **Unknown Application** action will match the **All Categories** action unless that action is Quarantine, which is unsupported for unknown applications.

Industrial Application Control signatures (434592)

The application control category Industrial is now controlled by a FortiGuard license and the default disable mask is no longer needed. The special category is also no longer used.

GUI updates to reflect package and license changes for IPS, Application Control and Industrial signatures (397010)

The following changes have been made to the GUI to reflect changes in the signature databases:

- Application Control signature database information is displayed under on the **System > FortiGuard** page in the FortiCare section.
- The IPS package version and license status are shown in a separate section in **System > FortiGuard** page. A link to manually upload the IPS database signatures has been added.
- The Industrial package version and license status are shown in a separate section in **System > FortiGuard** page. A link to manually upload the Industrial database signatures is available. Access to the Industrial database is provided with the purchase of the FortiGuard Industrial Security Service. The row item for this license will not appear if you are not subscribed.
- Botnet category is no longer available when searching the Application Signatures list.

Improved FortiClient monitor display (378288)

The GUI for the **Monitor > FortiClient Monitor** page has been revised.

- new dropdown option: **Online Only** or **Include Offline**. The default is **Online Only**.
- new dropdown option
 - **Sending FortiTelemetry Only** (default)
 - **Include All FortiTelemetry States**
 - **Not Sending FortiTelemetry Only**
- update: **Compliance** status for offline device is **N/A**
- update: offline status indicator to grey
- new compliance status text after the icon in **Compliance** column
- Moved **Compliance** column after **Status** column
- Combined unregistered endpoint devices with not registered devices

FortiSandbox integration with AntiVirus in quick mode (436380)

FortiSandbox options in an AntiVirus Security Profile in quick scanning mode can now be enabled with CLI commands.

CLI syntax

```
config antivirus profile
edit default
set ftgd-analytics disable/everything
set analytics-max-upload 10
set analytics-wl-filetype 0
set analytics-bl-filetype 0
set analytics-db enable/disable
set scan-mode quick
end
```

Pre-configured parental controls for web filtering (399715)

Pre-configured filters based on the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA) ratings can now be added to the Web Filter Security Profile. This feature is already available on FortiCloud and uses the same ratings categories.

Anti-Spam GUI updates (300423)

Changes made to the Anti-Spam profile update the GUI to reflect FortiOS 5.6 style.

Security Profiles (5.6)

New security profile features added to FortiOS 5.6.

New FortiGuard Web Filter categories (407574)

New categories added to FortiGuard Web Filter sub-categories:

- Under Security Risk:
 - Newly Observed Domain (5.90)
 - Newly Registered Domain (5.91)
- Under General Interest - Business
 - Charitable Organizations (7.92)
 - Remote Access (7.93)
 - Web Analytics (7.94)
 - Online Meeting (7.95)

Newly observed domain (NOD) applies to URLs whose domain name is not rated and were observed for the first time in the past 30 minutes.

Newly registered domain (NRD) applies to URLs whose domain name was registered in the previous 10 days.

Overall improvement to SSL inspection performance (405224)

The enabling / disabling of proxy cipher / xcp hardware acceleration in CP8/CP9 required restarting of the WAD daemon for the change to take effect; this bug has been repaired.

New CLI commands

The FortiGate will use the `ssl-queue-threshold` command to determine the maximum queue size of the CP SSL queue. In other words, if the SSL encryption/decryption task queue size is larger than the threshold, the FortiGate will switch to use CPU rather than CP. If less, it will employ CP.

```
config firewall ssl setting
    set ssl-queue-threshold <integer>
end
```

The integer represents the maximum length of the CP SSL queue. Once the queue is full, the proxy switches cipher functions to the main CPU. The range is 0 - 512 and the default is 32.

FortiClient Endpoint license updates (401721)

FortiClient endpoint licenses for FortiOS 5.6.0 can be purchased in multiples of 100. There is a maximum client limit based on the FortiGate's model. FortiCare enforces the maximum limits when the customer is applying the license to a model.

If you are using the ten free licenses for FortiClient, support is provided on the Fortinet Forum (forum.fortinet.com). Phone support is only available for paid licenses.

Model(s)	Maximum Client Limit
VM00	200
FGT/FWF 30 to 90 series	200
FGT 100 to 400 series	600

Model(s)	Maximum Client Limit
FGT 500 to 900 series, VM01, VM02	2,000
FGT 1000 to 2900 series	20,000
FGT 3000 to 3600 series, VM04	50,000
FGT 3700D and above, VM08 and above	100,000

Older FortiClient SKUs will still be valid and can be applied to FortiOS 5.4 and 5.6.



If you are using the ten free licenses for FortiClient, support is provided on the Fortinet Forum (forum.fortinet.com). Phone support is only available for paid licenses.

FortiClient Vulnerability Exemption Setting (407230)

A new CLI command provides a manual override for client computers with vulnerabilities that cannot be fixed.

CLI Syntax

New command to enable/disable compliance exemption for vulnerabilities that cannot be auto patched. Default is `disable`.

```
config endpoint-control profile
  edit <profile-name>
    config forticlient-winmac-setting
      set forticlient-vuln-scan enable
      set forticlient-vuln-scan-exempt [enable|disable]
    end
  next
end
```

DNS profile supports safe search (403275)

Users can take advantage of pre-defined DNS doctor rules to edit DNS profiles and provide safe search for Google, Bing, and YouTube.

To add safe search to a DNS profile - GUI

1. Go to **Security Profiles > DNS Filter**.
2. Edit the default filter or create a new one.
3. Enable **Enforce 'Safe Search on Google, Bing, YouTube**.
4. Select **Strict** or **Moderate** level of restriction for **YouTube Access**.

To add safe search to a DNS profile - CLI

```
config dnsfilter profile
```



```

edit "default"
    set safe-search enable
    set youtube-restrict {strict | moderate} (only available is safe-search enabled)
next
end

```

Application control and Industrial signatures separate from IPS signatures (382053)

IPS, Application control and industrial signatures have been separated. The get system status command shows the versions of each signature database:

```

get system status
Version: FortiGate-5001D v5.6.0,build1413,170121 (interim)
Virus-DB: 42.00330(2017-01-23 01:16)
Extended DB: 1.00000(2012-10-17 15:46)
Extreme DB: 1.00000(2012-10-17 15:47)
IPS-DB: 6.00741(2015-12-01 02:30)
IPS-ETDB: 0.00000(2001-01-01 00:00)
APP-DB: 6.00741(2015-12-01 02:30)

```

Changes to default SSL inspection configuration (380736)

SSL inspection is mandatory in the CLI and GUI and is enabled by default.

GUI Changes

- Updated edit dialogues for IPv4/IPv6 Policy and Explicit Proxy Policy
 - SSL/SSH inspection data displayed in muted palette
 - disabled the toggle button for this option
 - set the default profile as "certificate-inspection"
- Updated list pages for IPv4/IPv6 Policy and Explicit Proxy Policy
 - Add validation for "ssl-ssh-profile" when configuring UTM profiles
- Updated SSL/SSH Inspection list page
 - disabled delete menu on GUI for default ssl profiles
 - changed "Edit" menu to "View" menu for default ssl profiles
 - added implicit class (grayed) the default ssl profile entries
- Updated SSL/SSH Inspection edit dialog
 - disabled all the inputs for default ssl profiles except download/view trusted certificate links
 - changed button to "Return" for default ssl profiles to return the list page
- Updated Profile Group edit dialog
 - removed checkbox for "ssl-ssh-profile" option, make it always required.

CLI changes

1. `ssl-ssh-profile` default value is `certificate-inspection` when applicable in table `firewall.profile-group`, `firewall.policy`, `firewall.policy6`, `firewall.explicit-proxy-policy`
2. make default profiles "certificate-inspection", "deep-ssl-inspection" read only in table `firewall.ssl-ssh-profile`

Block Google QUIC protocol in default Application Control configuration (385190)

QUIC is an experimental protocol from Google. With recent Google Chrome versions (52 and above), and updated Google services, more than half of connections to Google servers are now in QUIC. This affects the accuracy of Application Control. The default configuration for Application control blocks QUIC.

Users may enable QUIC with CLI commands.

CLI Syntax

```
config application list
  edit <profile-name>
    set options allow-quic
  end
```

Botnet database changes (390756)

Starting in FortiOS 5.6, FortiGate units and FortiGuard Distribution Servers (FDS) will use object IDs IBDB and DBDB to download and update the Botnet database. Botnet protection will be part of the AntiVirus contract.

FortiOS 5.4 uses object IDs IRDB and BDDB.

Security Fabric audit check for endpoint vulnerability and unauthorized FAP and FSW (401462)

The new Security Fabric Audit feature allows for the display of endpoint vulnerability status in real-time. Users can see:

- FortiClient devices that have critical vulnerabilities detected.
- Discovered FortiSwitches that have not yet been authorized.
- Discovered FortiAPs that have not yet been authorized.

Change to CLI commands for configuring custom Internet services (397029)

Custom internet services are no longer configured through use of the commands `config application internet-service` and `config application internet-service-custom` in the CLI.

These commands are replaced by `config firewall internet-service` and `config firewall internet-service-custom`.

CLI Syntax - examples

```
config firewall internet-service 1245324
  set name "Fortinet-FortiGuard"
  set reputation 5
  set icon-id 140
  set offset 1602565
  config entry
    edit 1
      set protocol 6
      set port 443
      set ip-range-number 27
      set ip-number 80
    next
```

```

        edit 2
            set protocol 6
            set port 8890
            set ip-range-number 27
            set ip-number 80
        next
        edit 3
            set protocol 17
            set port 53
            set ip-range-number 18
            set ip-number 31
        next
        edit 4
            set protocol 17
            set port 8888
            set ip-range-number 18
            set ip-number 31
        next
    end
end

config firewall internet-service-custom
    edit "custom1"
        set comment "custom1"
        config entry
            edit 1
                set protocol 6
                config port-range
                    edit 1
                        set start-port 30
                        set end-port 33
                    next
                end
                set dst "google-drive" "icloud"
            next
        end
    next
end

```

Enable "sync-session-ttl" in "config ips global" CLI by default (399737)

`sync-session-ttl` is now set to `enable` by default in order to:

- enhance detection of P2P traffic. Efficient detection of P2P is important on hardware accelerated platforms
- ensure that IPS and the kernel use the same ttl
- ensure that IPS sessions time out sooner

CASI functionality moved into application control (385183, 372103)

Cloud Access Security Inspection (CASI) is merged with Application Control resulting in changes to the GUI and the CLI.

GUI Changes

- Toggle option added to quickly filter CASI signatures in the Application Signatures list.
- Application Overrides table now shows any parent-child hierarchy using the --parent metadata on signatures. Deleting a parent app also deletes its child apps. And conversely, adding a child app will add all its parent apps but with implicit filter action.
- A policy breakdown is shown on existing application control profiles for policies using the profile. The breakdown indicates which policies are using a deep inspection.
- A breakdown is shown for application categories and filter overrides to indicate the number of CASI and non-CASI signatures. A lock icon is shown for applications requiring deep inspection.

CLI Changes

Commands removed:

- `config application casi profile`
- `casi profile in config firewall policy`
- `casi profile in config firewall policy6`
- `casi-profile-status and casi-profile under config firewall sniffer`
- `casi-profile-status and casi-profile under config firewall interface-policy`

New diagnose command to delete avatars (388634)

Commands to delete avatars by FortiClient UID or avatar name have been added to the CLI.

the two following commands has been added to diagnose endpoint avatar:

- `diagnose endpoint avatar delete <ftcl_uid>`
- `diagnose endpoint avatar delete <ftcl_uid> <username>`

The attribute `delete` did not exist before. The values `<ftcl_uid>` and `<user_name>` describe a set of avatars. If only `<ftcl_uid>` is defined, all avatars belonging to this FortiClient UID that are not being used will be removed. If both values are defined, the avatar belonging to them will be removed unless they are being used in which case this call will cause an error to user.

Fortinet bar option disabled in profile protocol options when VDOM is in flow-based inspection mode (384953)

In order to prevent the Fortinet Bar from being enabled and redirecting traffic to proxy (WAD) when a VDOM is in flow-based mode, the Fortinet Bar option is disabled in profile protocol options.

SSL/SSH profile certificate handling changes (373835)

In order to support DSA and ECDSA key exchange (in addition to RSA) in SSL resign and replace mode, CLI commands for `deep-inspection` have changed. The `certname` command in `ssl-ssh-profile` has been removed.

To select from the list of available certificates in the system, use the CLI below.

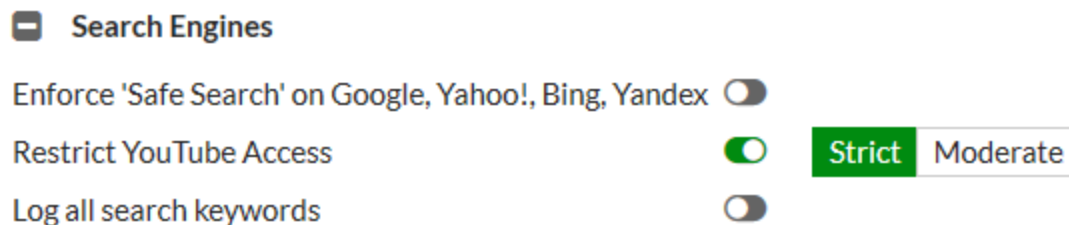
```
edit deep-inspection
```

```
set server-cert-mode re-sign
set certname-{rsa | dsa | ecdsa}
```

Restricting access to YouTube (replacement for the YouTube Education filter feature) (378277)

Previous versions of FortiOS supported YouTube for Schools (YTfS). As of July 1, 2016 this feature is no longer supported by YouTube. Instead you can use the information in the YouTube support article [Restrict YouTube content on your network or managed devices](#) to achieve the same result. FortiOS supports applying **Strict** or **Moderate** restrictions using HTTP headers as described in this article.

In FortiOS 5.6 with inspection mode set to proxy-based, in a Web Filter profile under **Search Engines** you can select **Restrict YouTube Access** and select either **Strict** or **Moderate**.



Enhancements to IPS Signatures page (285543)

The IPS signatures list page now shows which IPS package is currently deployed. Users can also change their IPS package by linking directly to the FortiGate's **System > FortiGuard** page from the IPS Signatures list page.

DLP sensor GUI changes (307225)

The DLP sensor for file size has been corrected to indicate that the file size has to be greater than the number of KB entered. Previously, the GUI incorrectly showed that the files size could be greater than or equal to the number of KB entered.

Web Filter profile page GUI updates (309012)

The GUI for the **Web Filter** security profile and **Web Profile Overrides** pages are changed.

Web Filter profile page

- removed multiselect for override user group and profile
- replaced FortiGuard categories actions icons with font icons
- added tooltip for **Allow users to override blocked categories** to explain the policy group dependency

Web Profile Overrides page

- removed multiselect of user, user group, original profile, new profile
- duplicate profile for new profile (for bug #284239)

Web Filter Quota traffic can no longer be set to 0 (374380)

To fix a bug in older major release, the CLI has been changed so that minimum traffic quota does not allow 0 as an entry. The value entered must be in the range of 1 - 4,294,967,295; if 0 is entered, then an error message will be returned.

CLI Commands:

```
config webfilter profile
edit default
config ftgd-wf
config quota
edit 1
set type traffic
set value {a number in the range of 1 - 4,294,967,295}
```

Webcache-https and SSL deep inspection profile configuration changes (381101)

In older releases, the CLI blocked the configuration of the SSL deep inspection profile when webcache-https was enabled. This bug is fixed in FortiOS 5.6.0.

FortiGate conserve mode changes (242562, 386503)

The following changes were made to rework **conserve mode** and facilitate its implementation:

- Implemented CLI commands to configure **extreme**, **red**, and **green** memory usage thresholds in percentages of total RAM. Memory used is the criteria for these thresholds, and set at 95% (extreme), 88% (red) and 82% (green).
- Removed structure `av_conserve_mode`, other changes in kernel to obtain and set memory usage thresholds from the kernel
- Added conserve mode diagnostic command `diag hardware sysinfo conserve`, which displays information about memory conserve mode.
- Fixed conserve mode logs in the kernel
- Added conserve mode stats to the proxy daemon through command `diag sys proxy stats all | grep conserve_mode`

New custom IPS and Application Control Signatures list (280954)

You can now create IPS and Application control custom signatures by going to **Security Profiles > Custom Signatures**. From here you can create and edit all custom IPS and Application Control signatures.

Default inspection mode set to flow-based (377392)

In FortiOS 5.6.0, the following changes were made to inspection mode:

- factory default sets the FortiGate to flow-based inspection with VDOM disabled
- whenever a VDOM is created, the default inspection mode is flow-based

You must use the CLI to set the FortiGate to proxy-based inspection. To change the inspection mode back to flow-based inspection, you may use the GUI or the CLI.

```
config system settings
```

```
edit <name_str>  
  set inspection-mode {proxy | flow}  
end
```

Server Load balancing (5.6.1)

New load balancing features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

Add server load balancing real servers on the Virtual Server GUI page (416709)

In previous versions of the FortiOS GUI, after adding a Virtual Server you would go to **Policy & Objects > Real Servers** to add real servers and associate each real server with a virtual server.




In FortiOS 5.6.1 you now go to **Policy & Objects > Virtual Servers**, configure a virtual server and then from the same GUI page add real servers to the virtual server. In addition, on the Virtual Server GUI page the option **Outgoing Interface** is renamed **Interface** and the load balancing method **Source IP Hash** has been renamed **Static**.


Edit Virtual Server

Name

Comments 0/255



Network

Type	HTTP
Interface	 port2
Virtual Server IP	172.20.121.2
Virtual Server Port	80
Load Balancing Method	Weighted
Persistence	None HTTP Cookie
Health Check	<div>  HTTP check × </div> <div>  Ping-check × </div> <div>+</div>

HTTP Multiplexing  ☐

Preserve Client IP ☐

Real Servers

<div> + Create New  Edit  Delete </div>				
IP Address	Port	Weight	Max Connections	Mode
10.10.10.1	80	10	0	Active
10.10.10.2	80	10	0	Active
10.10.10.3	80	10	0	Active

Server Load balancing (5.6)

New load balancing features added to FortiOS 5.6.

IPv6, 6to4, and 4to6 server load balancing (280073)

Sever load balancing is supported for:

- IPv6 VIPs (`config firewall vip6`)
- IPv6 to IPv4 (6to4) VIPs (`config firewall vip64`)
- IPv4 to IPv6 (4to6) VIPs (`config firewall vip46`)

Configuration is the same as IPv4 VIPs, except support for advanced HTTP and SSL related features is not available. IPv6 server load balancing supports all the same server types as IPv4 server load balancing (HTTP, HTTPS, IMAPS, POP3S, SMTPS, SSL, TCP, UDP, and IP). IPv4 to IPv6 and IPv6 to IPv4 server load balancing supports fewer server types (HTTP, TCP, UDP, and IP).

Improved Server load balancing GUI pages (404169)

Server load balancing GUI pages have been updated and now include more functionality and input verification.

Session-aware Load Balancing (SLBC) (5.6.1)

New SLBC features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

FortiController-5000 series independent port splitting (42333)

FortiOS 5.6.1 supports splitting some 40G FortiController front panel fiber channel front panel interfaces in to 10G ports. In previous versions of FortiOS this configuration was not supported and all FortiController fiber channel front panel interfaces had to operate at the same speed.

SSL VPN (5.6.3)

New SSL VPN features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

Virtual desktop option no longer supported (442044)

The SSL VPN web portal no longer supports the virtual desktop and its option has been removed from the interface.

Option to disable FortiClient download in web portal (439736)

You can use the following commands to enable or disable allowing SSL VPN users to download FortiClient from the SSL VPN web portal. If `forticlient-download` is enabled, you can select the download method (`direct` or `over the ssl_vpn`). You can also optionally specify a custom URL for downloading the Windows and Mac OS versions of FortiClient.

Syntax

```
config vpn ssl web portal
  edit <portal name>
    set forticlient-download {enable | disable}
    set forticlient-download-method {direct | ssl-vpn}
    set customize-forticlient-download-url {enable | disable}
    set windows-forticlient-download-url <url>
    set macos-forticlient-download-url <url>
  end
```

Upgraded OpenSSL to 1.1.x (412033) (...)

OpenSSL has been upgraded to 1.1 to provide more cryptographic algorithms. All 3rd-party libraries that depend on OpenSSL have also been updated. OpenLDAP has been upgraded to 2.4.45 to be compatible with OpenSSL 1.1. Furthermore, the `ssl_v3` attribute has been removed from `vpn.ssl.settings` and `global.admin-https-ssl-version`.

SSL VPN (5.6.1)

New SSL VPN features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

Added a button to send Ctrl-Alt-Delete to the remote host for VNC and RDP desktop connections (401807)

Previously, users were unable to send **Ctrl-Alt-Delete** to the host machine in an SSL VPN remote desktop connection.

FortiOS 5.6.1 adds a new button that allows users to send **Ctrl-Alt-Delete** in remote desktop tools (also fixes 412456, preserving the SSL VPN realm after session timeout prompts a logout).

Improved SSL VPN Realms page (0392184)

Implemented minor functional changes to the dialog on the **SSL VPN > Realms** page:

- URL preview uses info message similar to that seen on the SSL VPN settings dialog.
- Virtual-Host input is now visible when set in the CLI.
- Added help tooltip describing what the virtual-host property does.

Customizable FortiClient Download URL in SSL VPN Web Portal (437883)

A new attribute, `customize-forticlient-download-url`, is added to `vpn.ssl.web.portal`.

The added attribute indicates whether to support a customizable download URI for FortiClient. This attribute is disabled by default. If enabled, two other attributes, `windows-forticlient-download-url` and `macos-forticlient-download-url`, will appear through which the user can customize the download URL for FortiClient.

Syntax

```
config vpn ssl web portal
  edit <portal>
    set customize-forticlient-download-url {enable | disable}
    set windows-forticlient-download-url <custom URL for Windows>
    set macos-forticlient-download-url <custom URL for Mac OS>
  next
end
```

SSL VPN SSO Support for HTML5 RDP (417248)

This feature adds support for SSO from the SSL VPN portal to an RDP bookmark. If SSO is used, then the credentials used to login to SSL VPN will be automatically used when connecting to a remote RDP server.

Syntax

```
conf vpn ssl web user-bookmark
  edit <name>
    config bookmarks
      edit <name>
        set apptype rdp
        set host "x.x.x.x"
        set port <value>
        set sso [disable | auto]
      next
    end
  next
end
```

SSL VPN (5.6)

New SSL VPN features added to FortiOS 5.6.

Remote desktop configuration changes (410648)

If NLA security is chosen when creating an RDP bookmark, a username and password must be provided. However there may be instances where the user might want to use a blank password, despite being highly unrecommended. If a username is provided but the password is empty, the CLI will display a warning. See example CLI below, where the warning appears as a caution before finishing the command:

```
config vpn ssl web user-group-bookmark
  edit <group-name>
    config bookmarks
      edit <bookmark-name>
        set apptype rdp
        set host 172.16.200.121
        set security nla
        set port 3389
        set logon-user <username>
      next
    end
```

Warning: password is empty. It might fail user authentication and remote desktop connection would be failed.

```
end
```

If no username (logon-user) is specified, the following warning message will appear:

```
Please enter user name for RDP security method NLA. object set operator error, -2010
discard the setting Command fail. Return code -2010
```

SSL VPN supports WAN link load balancing interface (396236)

This new feature allows you to set `virtual-wan-link` as the destination interface in a firewall policy (when SSL VPN is the source interface) for WAN link load balancing in the GUI and in the CLI. This lets you log into a FortiGate via SSL VPN for traffic inspection and then have outbound traffic load balanced by WAN link load balancing.

Syntax

```
config firewall policy
  edit <example>
    set dstintf virtual-wan-link
  end
```

SSL VPN login timeout to support high latency (394583)

With long network latency, the FortiGate can timeout the client before it can finish negotiation processes, such as DNS lookup and time to enter a token. Two new CLI commands under `config vpn ssl settings` have been added that allow the login timeout to be configured, replacing the previous hard timeout value. The second command can be used to set the SSL VPN maximum DTLS hello timeout.

Syntax

```
config vpn ssl settings
  edit <example>
    set login-timeout [10-180] Default is 30 seconds.
    set dtls-hello-timeout [10-60] Default is 10 seconds.
```

```
end
```

SSL VPN supports Windows 10 OS check (387276)

A new CLI field has been added to the `os-check-list` under `config vpn ssl web portal` to allow OS checking for Windows 10.

Syntax

```
config vpn ssl web portal
  edit <example>
    set os-check enable
    config os-check-list windows-10
      set action {deny | allow | check-up-to-date}
    end
  end
end
```

SSL VPN DNS suffix per portal and number of portals (383754)

A new CLI command under `config vpn ssl web portal` to implement a DNS suffix per SSL VPN portal. Each suffix setting for each specific portal will override the `dns-suffix` setting under `config vpn ssl settings`.

This feature also raises bookmark limits and the number of portals that can be supported, depending on what FortiGate series model is used:

- 650 portals on 1000D series
- 1300 portals on 2000E series
- 2600 portals on 3000D series

The previous limit for 1000D series models, for example, was 256 portals.

Syntax

```
config vpn ssl web portal
  edit <example>
    set dns-suffix <string>
  end
end
```

New SSL VPN timeout settings (379870)

New SSL VPN timeout settings have been introduced to counter 'Slowloris' and 'R-U-Dead-Yet' vulnerabilities that allow remote attackers to cause a denial of service via partial HTTP requests.

The FortiGate solution is to add two attributes (`http-request-header-timeout` and `http-request-body-timeout`).

Syntax

```
config vpn ssl settings
  set http-request-header-timeout [1-60] (seconds)
  set http-request-body-timeout [1-60] (seconds)
end
```

Personal bookmark improvements (377500)

You can now move and clone personal bookmarks in the GUI and CLI.

Syntax

```
config vpn ssl web user-bookmark
  edit 'name'
    config bookmarks
      move bookmark1 after/before
      clone bookmark1 to
    next
  end
```

New controls for SSL VPN client login limits (376983)

Removed the limitation of SSL VPN user login failure time, by linking SSL VPN user setting with `config user settings` and provided a new option to remove SSL VPN login attempts limitation. New CLI allows the administrator to configure the number of times wrong credentials are allowed before SSL VPN server blocks an IP address, and also how long the block would last.

Syntax

```
config vpn ssl settings
  set login-attempt-limit [0-10] Default is 2.
  set login-block-time [0-86400] Default is 60 seconds.
end
```

Unrated category removed from ssl-exempt (356428)

The "Unrated" category has been removed from the SSL Exempt/Web Category list.

Clipboard support for SSL VPN remote desktop connections (307465)

A remote desktop clipboard viewer pane has been added which allows user to copy, interact with and overwrite remote desktop clipboard contents.

System (5.6.3)

New system administration features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

System (5.6.1)

New system administration features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

Use self-sign as default GUI certificate if BIOS cert is using SHA-1 (403152)

For increased security, SHA-1 certificate has been replaced by self-sign certificate as the default GUI certificate, if the BIOS certificate is using SHA-1.

Administrator timeout override per access profile (413543)

The GUI is often used for central monitoring. To do this requires the inactivity timeout to be increased, to avoid an admin having to constantly log in over again. This new feature allows the **admintimeout** value, under `config system accprofile`, to be overridden per access profile.

Note that this can be achieved on a per-profile basis, to avoid the option from being unintentionally set globally.

CLI Syntax - Configure admin timeout

```
config system accprofile
edit <name>
    set admintimeout-override {enable | disable}
    set admintimeout <0-480> - (default = 10, 0 = unlimited)
next
end
```

New execute script command (423159)

A new `execute` command has been introduced to merge arbitrary configlets into the running configuration from script. The command's authentication can be carried out using either username and password or with a certificate. This command supports FTP/TFTP and SCP.

An important benefit of this feature is that if the configuration in the script fails (i.e. a syntax error), the system will revert back to running configurations without interrupting the network.

CLI Syntax - Load script from FTP/TFTP/SCP server to firewall

```
execute restore scripts <ftp | tftp |
scp> <dir / filename in server> <server ip> <username> <password>
```

System (5.6)

New system administration features added to FortiOS 5.6.

Remove CLI commands from 1-CPU platforms (405321)

Two CLI commands that set CPU affinity have been removed from 1-CPU platforms since they do not have any impact on these platforms. The commands are `config system global > set miglog-affinity` and `config system global > set av-affinity <string>`.

New SNMP trap for bypass events (307329)

When bypass mode is enabled or disabled on FortiGate units that are equipped with bypass interfaces and support AMC modules, a new SNMP trap is generated and logs bypass events.

Implement SNMP support for NAT Session monitoring which includes new SNMP OIDs (383661)

FortiOS 5.6 implements a new feature providing SNMP support for NAT session monitoring. The resulting new SNMP object identifier (OID) is:

FORTINET-FORTIGATE-
MIB:fortinet.fnFortiGateMib.fgFirewall.fgFwIppools.fgFwIppTables.fgFwIppStatsTable.fgFwIppStatsEntry
1.3.6.1.4.1.12356.101.5.3.2.1.1

Additionally, there are eight new items:

- .fgFwIppStatsName .1
- .fgFwIppStatsType .2
- .fgFwIppStatsStartIp .3
- .fgFwIppStatsEndIp .4
- .fgFwIppStatsTotalSessions .5
- .fgFwIppStatsTcpSessions .6
- .fgFwIppStatsUdpSessions .7
- .fgFwIppStatsOtherSessions .8

New extended database version OIDs for AV and IPS (402162)

New extended database version OIDs ensure accurate display of the AntiVirus and IPS databases in use when you go to **System > FortiGuard**.

Administrator password encryption hash upgraded from SHA1 to SHA256 (391576)

The encryption has for administrator passwords is upgraded from SHA1 to SHA256.

Downgrades from FortiOS 5.6->5.4->5.2->5.0 will keep the administrator password usable. If you need to downgrade to FortiOS 4.3, remove the password before the downgrade, then login after the downgrade and re-set password.

Allow multiple FortiManager addresses when configuring central management (388083)

Central management configuration can now support multiple FortiManager addresses. This feature is mainly to help the case where the FortiGate unit is behind NAT.

FortiGuard can determine a FortiGate's location from its public IP address (393972)

A new CLI command allows users to determine a FortiGate's location from its public IP address through FortiGuard.

The new CLI command is `diagnose system waninfo`.

Deletion of multiple saved configurations supported (308936)

The FortiGate will save multiple configurations and images when `revision-backup-on-logout` and `revision-image-auto-backup` are enabled in `config system global`.

The deletion of multiple saved configurations is now possible due to changes in the CLI command `execute revision delete config <revision ID>`. Where the command only allowed for one revision ID at a time, it now allows almost ten.

New CLI option to limit script output size (388221)

The new CLI command `set output-size` limits the size of an auto script in megabytes and prevents the memory from being used up by the script's output.

CLI Syntax

```
config system auto-script
  edit <script name>
    set output-size <integer>
  next
end
```

Enter an integer value from 10 to 1024. Default is 10.

Enable / disable logging of SSL connection events (375582)

New CLI commands are added to give the user the option to enable or disable logging of SSL connection events.

CLI Syntax

```
config system global
  set log-ssl-connection {enable | disable}
end
```

Default is `disable`.

Enabling or disabling static key ciphers (379616)

There is a new option in `system global` to enable or disable static key ciphers in SSL/TLS connections (e.g., AES128-SHA, AES256-SHA, AES128-SHA256, AES256-SHA256). The default is enable.

CLI Syntax

```
config system global
    set ssl-static-key-ciphers {enable | disable}
end
```

Enhancements to IPS Signatures page (285543)

The IPS signatures list page now shows which IPS package is currently deployed. You can also change the IPS package by hovering over the information icon next to the IPS package name. Text appears that links directly to the FortiGate's **System > FortiGuard** page from the IPS Signatures list page.

Combine multiple commands into a CLI alias (308921)

You can add one or more CLI command to a CLI alias, then use the `alias` command to run the alias that you have created to execute the stored commands. For example, create the following `alias` to run the `get system status` command:

```
config system alias
    edit "version"
        set command "get system status"
    end
```

Then you can use the following command to run the alias:

```
alias version
```

You can use command abbreviations (for example: `g sys stat` instead of `get system status`). Use quotes around the syntax if there are spaces (there usually are).

You can enter `alias` followed by a `?` to view the aliases that you have added.

You can add multiple commands to an alias by pressing **Ctrl-Enter** after the first line. Press enter at the end of subsequent lines. And the end of the last line add second quote and press Enter to end the command.

```
config system alias
    edit "debug_flow"
        set command "diag debug enable
        diag debug flow show console enable"
    end
```

You can include config commands in an alias as well, for example, create the following alias to bring the port1 and port2 interfaces down:

```
config system alias
    edit port12down
        set command "config system interface
        edit port1
        set status down
        next
        edit port2
        set status down
        end"
```

```
end
```

You can combine `config`, `execute`, `get`, and `diagnose` commands in the same alias, for example:

```
config system alias
edit "show-info"
    set command "show full-configuration alertemail setting
    get sys status
    dia sys top"
end
```

Traffic shaping (5.6.3)

Support schedule on traffic shaping policy (450337)

Mantis 269943 implemented a new feature "shaping-policy", but the ability to apply different shaping profiles at different time was left out. This feature fills the gap by adding a "schedule" attribute on the shaping policy.

VDMs (5.6.1)

This section describes new VDOM features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

Create a virtual switch that allows multiple VDOMs to use the same physical interface or VLAN (436206)

This feature allows multiple VDOMs to access the same network or the Internet using the same physical interface rather than requiring each VDOM to have its own Internet-facing interface.

To create this configuration, consider a FortiGate with three VDOMs:

```
config vdom
  edit root
  next
  edit vdom1
  next
  edit vdom2
end
```

Create inter-VDOM links for vdom1 and vdom2. The inter-VDOM links should have their `type` set to `ethernet`.

```
config system vdom-link
  edit "vlnk1"
    set type ethernet
  next
  edit "vlnk2"
    set type ethernet
end
```

These commands create the following four interfaces:

- vlnk1 creates the interfaces vlnk10 and vlnk11
- vlnk2 creates the interfaces vlnk20 and vlnk21

Then create a virtual switch, add it to the root VDOM, and add the first interface created for each inter-VDOM link to it along with the physical interface or VLAN that the VDOMs will use to connect to the external network. In this example, the VDOMs will all connect to the Internet through the wan1 interface.

```
config system switch-interface
  edit "vs1"
    set vdom "root"
    set member "wan1" "vlnk10" "vlnk20"
  end
```

Then distribute the interfaces in the virtual switch to the respective VDOMs and configure the required IP settings. In this example:

- wan1, vlnk10, and vlnk20 are added to the root VDOM
- vlnk11 is added to vdom1
- vlnk21 is added to vdom2
- wan1, vlnk11 and vlnk21 are configured with IP addresses on the same subnet. The example uses internal IP addresses that may not be appropriate for your network.

```
config system interface
  edit "wan1"
```

```
    set vdom "root"
    set ip 10.1.1.101 255.255.255.0
next
edit "vlnk10"
    set vdom "root"
    set type vdom-link
next
edit "vlnk20"
    set vdom "root"
    set type vdom-link
next
edit "vlnk11"
    set vdom "vdom1"
    set ip 10.1.1.102 255.255.255.0
    set type vdom-link
next
edit "vlnk21"
    set vdom "vdom2"
    set ip 10.1.1.103 255.255.255.0
    set type vdom-link
end
```

VDOMs (5.6.0)

This section describes new VDOM features added to FortiOS 5.6

Dashboard changes

The option to enable VDOMs is no longer part of the **System Information** widget. To enable VDOMs, you must now go to **System > Settings**.

Firewall Service Cache improvement

The Firewall Service Cache will now have separate caches for each VDOM, to improve the speed of cache searches.

VoIP/SIP (5.6)

This chapter describes new VoIP and SIP features added to FortiOS 5.6.

SIP strict-register enabled by default in VoIP Profiles (380830)

If `strict-register` is disabled, when REGISTER is received by a FortiGate, the source address (usually the IP address of PBX) and ports (usually port 5060) are translated by NAT to the external address of the FortiGate and port 65476. Pinholes are then opened for SIP and RTP. This tells the SIP provider to send incoming SIP traffic to the external address of the FortiGate on port 65476.

This creates a security hole since the port is open regardless of the source IP address so an attacker who scans all the ports by sending REGISTER messages to the external IP of the FortiGate will eventually have one register go through.

When `strict-register` is enabled (the new default) the pinhole is smaller because it will only accept packets from the SIP server.

Enabling `strict-register` can cause problems when the SIP registrar and SIP proxy server are separate entities with separate IP addresses.

SIP diagnose command improvements (376853)

A diagnose command has been added to the CLI that outputs VDOM data located in the voipd daemon.

```
diagnose sys sip-proxy vdom
```

Example

```
(global) # diagnose sys sip-proxy vdom
VDOM list by id:
vdom 0 root (Kernel: root)
vdom 1 dmngmt-vdom (Kernel: dmngmt-vdom)
vdom 2 test2 (Kernel: test2)
vdom 3 test3 (Kernel: test3)
vdom 4 vdoma2 (Kernel: vdoma2)
vdom 5 vdomb2 (Kernel: vdomb2)
vdom 6 vdomc2 (Kernel: vdomc2)
vdom 7 vdoma (Kernel: vdoma)
vdom 8 vdomb (Kernel: vdomb)
vdom 9 vdomc (Kernel: vdomc)
VDOM list by name:
vdom 1 dmngmt-vdom (Kernel: dmngmt-vdom)
vdom 0 root (Kernel: root)
vdom 2 test2 (Kernel: test2)
vdom 3 test3 (Kernel: test3)
vdom 7 vdoma (Kernel: vdoma)
vdom 4 vdoma2 (Kernel: vdoma2)
vdom 8 vdomb (Kernel: vdomb)
vdom 5 vdomb2 (Kernel: vdomb2)
vdom 9 vdomc (Kernel: vdomc)
vdom 6 vdomc2 (Kernel: vdomc2)
```


WiFi (5.6.3)

New WiFi features added to FortiOS 5.6.3.

Allow admin with write permission to see plain text WiFi password (249787, 434513, 452834, 458211, 458285)

Add support for admins with write permission to read plain text password. Admins can view these plain text passwords (`captive-portal-radius-secret` and `passphrase`) under `config wireless-controller vap`. Note that `security` must be set as a WPA-personal setting.

WiFi Health Monitor page updates (392574, 392585, 404341, 417039, 434141, 440709)

The **WiFi Health Monitor** page list of active clients now shows their MAC address entries (similar to the **WiFi Client Monitor** page), making client information easier to view when opening the **Active Client** widget.

FortiAP LED Schedules (436227)

Support has been added for WTP profile LED schedules.

Use the command below (`led-schedule`) to assign recurring firewall schedules for illuminating LEDs on the FortiAP. This entry is only available when `led-state` is enabled, at which point LEDs will be visible when at least one of the schedules is valid.

Separate multiple schedule names with a space, as configured under `config firewall schedule group` and `config firewall schedule recurring`.

Syntax

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit {name}
    set led-state {enable | disable}
    set led-schedules <name>
  next
end
```

Sharing Tunnel SSIDs within a single managed AP between VDOMs as a Virtual AP for multi-tenancy (439751)

Support has been added for the ability to move a tunnel mode VAP into a VDOM, similar to an interface/VLAN in VDOMs.

FortiAP is registered into the root VDOM. Within a customer VDOM, customer VAPs can be created/added. In the root VDOM, the customer VAP can be added to the registered FortiAP. Any necessary firewall rules and interfaces can be configured between the two VDOMs.

Syntax

```
config wireless-controller global
  set wtp-share {enable | disable}
```

end

30D/30E models support two normal-mode FAPs (446122)

Fixed an issue that blocked FortiGate 30D and 30E models from supporting two normal-mode FortiAPs.

MAC Bypass for Captive Portal (448296)

Support has been added to provide a MAC address bypass for authenticated clients. Previously, when clients were authenticated with bridged SSID and their MAC addresses were known, they were not redirected to the External Captive Portal.

A new portal type has been added, under `config wireless-controller vap`, to provide successful MAC authentication Captive Portal functionality.

Syntax

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit {name}
    set portal-type {cmcc-macauth}
  next
end
```

WiFi Health Monitor fixes (449341)

An issue has been addressed where the **Client Count** widget (under **WiFi Health Monitor**) showed wrong options for the timeline selection.

The fixes include:

- Fixed timeline selection options to correct values.
- Updated time filter parameters with correct arguments in the **Login Failures** widget.
- Added local radio to **AP Status** widget details.
- Fixed **Login Failures** widget, where the SSID name was improperly formatted if it contained HTML characters.

Various bug fixes (452975, 455218, 453161, 405117, 453533, 453535, 184384)

Various fixes have been implemented to address a variety of issues:

The fixes include:

- Removed code to avoid repeated printing "parse dhcp options" after upgrade or reboot.
- Removed code that supported FAP-C221E, C226E, and C21D, as their product names changed.
- Changed the text for incorrect WiFi CLI help descriptions.
- Fixed background scan settings for FAP 222C, 223C, 321C, C220C, C225C, C23JD, and C24JE.
- Set WTP entry with "discovered" state to built-in in order to skip them, as only managed FAPs can be counted toward FAP capacity.

Configure how a FortiWiFi WiFi interface in client mode selects a WiFi band (455305)

For an FortiWiFi WiFi interface operating in client mode, you can use the following option to configure the WiFi band that the interface can connect to. You can configure the interface to connect to any band, just to the 5G band or to prefer connecting to the 5G band.

Syntax

```
config system interface
  edit {name}
    set wifi-ap-band {any | 5g-preferred | 5g-only}
  next
end
```

WiFi (5.6.1)

New WiFi features added to FortiOS 5.6.1.

Support for various FortiAP models (416177) (435638) (424483)

FortiAP units FAP-U321EV, FAP-U323EV, FAP-S221E, FAP-S223E, FAP-222E, FAP-221E, and FAP-223E are supported by FortiOS 5.6.1.

As part of this support, new CLI attributes have been added under `config wireless-controller wtp-profile` to manage their profiles.

CLI syntax

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit <model>
    config platform
      set type <model>
    end
    set ap-country <code>
    config radio-1
      set band 802.11n
    end
    config radio-2
      set band 802.11ac
    end
  next
end
```

New Managed AP Groups and Dynamic VLAN Assignment (436267)

The FortiGate can create FortiAP Groups, under **WiFi & Switch Controller > Managed Devices > Managed FortiAPs** by selecting **Create New > Managed AP Group**, where multiple APs can be managed. AP grouping allows specific profile settings to be applied to many APs all at once that belong to a certain AP group, simplifying the administrative workload.

Note that each AP can only belong to one group.

In addition, VLANs can be assigned dynamically based on the group which an AP belongs. When defining an SSID, under **WiFi & Switch Controller > SSID**, a setting called **VLAN Pooling** can be enabled where you can either assign the VLAN ID of the AP group the device is connected to, to each device as it is detected, or to always assign the same VLAN ID to a specific device. Dynamic VLAN assignment allows the same SSID to be deployed to many APs, avoiding the need to produce multiple SSIDs.

GUI support for configuring multiple pre-shared keys for SSID interfaces (406321)

Multiple pre-shared keys can be created per SSID. When creating a new SSID, enable **Multiple Pre-shared Keys** under **WiFi Settings**.

FortiAP Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) Scan (438274)

The FortiGate can configure FortiAP Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) scan, incorporating Google's BLE beacon profile known as Eddystone, used to identify groups of devices and individual devices.



Currently, only the FAP-S221E, FAP-S223E, and FAP-222E models support this feature.

As part of this support, new CLI attributes have been added under `config wireless-controller timers` and `config wireless-controller wtp-profile`, including a new CLI command, `config wireless-controller ble-profile`.

CLI syntax - Configure BLE profiles

```
config wireless-controller ble-profile
edit <name>
    set comment <comment>
    set advertising {ibeacon | eddystone-uid | eddystone-url}
    set ibeacon-uuid <uuid>
    set major-id <0 - 65535> - (default = 1000)
    set minor-id <0 - 65535> - (default = 1000)
    set eddystone-namespace <10-byte namespace>
    set eddystone-instance <device id>
    set eddystone-url <url>
    set txpower <0 - 12> - (default = 0)
    set beacon-interval <40 - 3500> - (default = 100)
    set ble-scanning {enable | disable} - (default = disable)
next
end
```

Note that `txpower` determines the transmit power level on a scale of 0-12:

0: -21 dBm	1: -18 dBm	2: -15 dBm	3: -12 dBm	4: -9 dBm
5: -6 dBm	6: -3 dBm	7: 0 dBm	8: 1 dBm	9: 2 dBm
10: 3 dBm	11: 4 dBm	12: 5 dBm		

CLI syntax - Configure BLE report intervals

```
config wireless-controller timers
  set ble-scan-report-intv - (default = 30 sec)
end
```

CLI syntax - Assign BLE profiles to WTP profiles

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit <name>
    set ble-profile <name>
  next
end
```

WiFi client monitor page search enhanced (440709)

WiFi Client Monitor page (**Monitor > WiFi Client Monitor**) now supports search function.

WiFi (5.6)

New WiFi features added to FortiOS 5.6.

Captive Portal Authentication with FortiAP in Bridge Mode (408915)

The FortiGate can operate as a web captive portal server to serve the captive portal local bridge mode.

A new CLI command has been added under `config wireless-controller vap` to set the captive portal type to CMCC, a wireless cipher.

CLI syntax

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit <name>
    set portal-type { ... | cmcc }
  next
end
```

802.11kv(r) support (405498, 395037)

New CLI commands have been added under `config wireless-controller vap` to set various 802.11kv settings, or Voice Enterprise (802.11kv) and Fast Basic Service Set (BSS) Transition (802.11r), to provide faster and more intelligent roaming for the client.

CLI syntax

```
config wireless-controller vap
  edit <name>
    set voice-enterprise {enable | disable}
    set fast-bss-transition {enable | disable}
    set ft-mobility-domain
    set ft-r0-key-lifetime [1-65535]
```

```

        set ft-over-ds {enable | disable}
    next
end

```

External Captive Portal authentication with FortiAP in Bridge Mode (403115, 384872)

New CLI commands have been added under `config wireless-controller vap` to set various options for external captive portal with FortiAP in Bridge Mode. The commands set the standalone captive portal server category, the server's domain name or IP address, secret key to access the RADIUS server, and the standalone captive portal Access Controller (AC) name.

Note that these commands are only available when **local-standalone** is set to **enable** and **security** is set to **captive-portal**.

CLI syntax

```

config wireless-controller vap
    edit <name>
        set captive-portal-category {FortiCloud | CMCC} Default is FortiCloud.
        set captive-portal-radius-server <server>
        set captive-portal-radius-secret <password>
        set captive-portal-ac-name <name>
    next
end

```

Japan DFS support for FAP-421E/423E/S421E/S423E (402287, 401434)

Korea and Japan Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) certification has been added for FAP-421E/423E/S421E/S423E. DFS is a mechanism that allows WLANs to select a frequency that does not interfere with certain radar systems while operating in the 5 GHz band.

802.3az support on WAVE2 WiFi APs (400558)

A new CLI command has been added under `config wireless-controller wtp-profile` to enable or disable use of Energy-Efficient Ethernet (EEE) on WTP, allowing for less power consumption during periods of low data activity.

CLI syntax

```

config wireless-controller wtp-profile
    edit <profile-name>
        set energy-efficient-ethernet {enable|disable}
    end

```

CLI command update made in wids-profile (400263)

The CLI command `rogue-scan` under `config wireless-controller wids-profile` has been changed to `sensor-mode` and allows easier configuration of radio sensor mode. Note that while `foreign` enables radio sensor mode on foreign channels only, `both` enables the feature on foreign and home channels.

CLI syntax

```

config wireless-controller wids-profile

```

```
edit <example>
    set sensor-mode {disable|foreign|both}
end
```

Channel utilization, FortiPresence support on AP mode, QoS enhancement for voice (399134, 377562)

A new CLI command has been added, `config wireless-controller qos-profile`, to configure quality of service (QoS) profiles where you can add WiFi multi-media (WMM) control and Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) mapping.

Note that:

- `call-capacity` and `bandwidth-admission-control` are only available when `call-admission-control` is set to enable.
- `bandwidth-capacity` is only available when `bandwidth-admission-control` is set to enable.
- All DSCP mapping options are only available when `dscp-wmm-mapping` is set to enable.
- `wmm` is already set to enable by default. If `wmm` is set to disable, the following entries are *not* available: `wmm-uapsd`, `call-admission-control`, and `dscp-wmm-mapping`.

CLI syntax

```
config wireless-controller qos-profile
edit <example>
    set comment <comment>
    set uplink [0-2097152] Default is 0 Kbps.
    set downlink [0-2097152] Default is 0 Kbps.
    set uplink-sta [0-2097152] Default is 0 Kbps.
    set downlink-sta [0-2097152] Default is 0 Kbps.
    set burst {enable|disable} Default is disable.
    set wmm {enable|disable} Default is enable.
    set wmm-uapsd {enable|disable} Default is enable.
    set call-admission-control {enable|disable} Default is disable.
    set call-capacity [0-60] Default is 10 phones.
    set bandwidth-admission-control {enable|disable} Default is disable.
    set bandwidth-capacity [1-600000] Default is 2000 Kbps.
    set dscp-wmm-mapping {enable|disable} Default is disable.
    set dscp-wmm-vo [0-63] Default is 48 56.
    set dscp-wmm-vi [0-63] Default is 32 40.
    set dscp-wmm-be [0-63] Default is 0 24.
    set dscp-wmm-bk [0-63] Default is 8 16.
```

QoS profiles can be assigned under the `config wireless-controller vap` command using `qos-profile`.

FortiCloud managed APs can now be applied a bandwidth restriction or rate limitation based on SSID. For instance if guest and employee SSIDs are available, you can rate limit guest access to a certain rate to accommodate for employees. This feature also applies a rate limit based on the application in use, as APs are application aware.

FAP-U421E and FAP-U423E support (397900)

Two Universal FortiAP models support FortiOS 5.6. Their default profiles are added under `config wireless-controller wtp-profiles`, as shown below:

CLI syntax

```
config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit "FAPU421E-default"
config platform
set type U421E
end
set ap-country US
config radio-1
set band 802.11n
end
config radio-2
set band 802.11ac
end
next
end

config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit "FAPU423E-default"
config platform
set type U423E
end
set ap-country US
config radio-1
set band 802.11n
end
config radio-2
set band 802.11ac
end
next
end
```

Minor reorganization of WiFi GUI entries (396497)

WiFi & Switch Controller GUI entries **Managed FortiAPs**, **SSID**, **FortiAP Profiles**, and **WIDS Profiles** have been reorganized.

Multiple PSK support for WPA personal (393320, 264744)

New CLI commands have been added, under `config wireless-controller vap`, to configure multiple WiFi Protected Access Pre-Shared Keys (WPA-PSKs), as PSK is more secure without all devices having to share the same PSK.

Note that, for the following multiple PSK related commands to become available, `vdom`, `ssid`, and `passphrase` all have to be set first.

CLI syntax

```
config wireless-controller vap
edit <example>
set mpsk {enable|disable}
set mpsk-concurrent-clients [0-65535] Default is 0.
config mpsk-key
edit key-name <example>
```



```

        set passphrase <wpa-psk>
        set concurrent-clients [0-65535] Default is empty.
        set comment <comments>
    next
end
end

```

Use the `mpsk-concurrent-clients` entry to set the maximum number of concurrent connected clients for each `mpsk` entry. Use the `mpsk-key` configuration method to configure multiple `mpsk` entries.

Table size of qos-profile has VDOM limit (388070)

The command `config wireless-controller qos-profile` now has VDOM table limit; there is no longer an unlimited number of entries within each VDOM.

Add "dhcp-lease-time" setting to local-standalone-nat VAP (384229)

When a Virtual Access Point (VAP) has been configured for a FortiAP, a DHCP server is automatically configured on the FortiAP side with a hard lease time. A new CLI command under `config wireless-controller vap` has been added to customize the DHCP lease time for NAT IP address. This is to solve issues where the DHCP IP pool was exhausted when the number of clients grew too large for the lease time span.

Note that the new command, `dhcp-lease-time`, is only available when `local-standalone` is set to `enable`, then setting `local-standalone-nat` to `enable`.

CLI syntax

```

config wireless-controller vap
    edit <example>
        set local-standalone {enable|disable}
        set local-standalone-nat {enable|disable}
        set dhcp-lease-time [300-8640000] Default is 2400 seconds.
    end
end

```

New CLI command to configure LDPC for FortiAP (383864)

Previously, LDPC value on FortiAP could only be changed on FortiAP local CLI. Syntax has been added in FortiOS CLI under the 'wireless-controller.vap' entry to configure the LDPC value on FortiAP.

CLI Syntax

```

configure wireless-controller vap
    edit 1
        set ldpc [enable|rx|tx|disable]
    end
end

```

New region code/SKU for Indonesia (382926)

A new country region code, F, has been added to meet Indonesia's WiFi channel requirements. Indonesia previously belonged to region code W.

FortiAP RMA support added (381936)

New CLI command `fortiap` added under `execute replace-device` to replace an old FortiAP's serial number with a new one.

CLI Syntax

```
execute replace-device fortiap <old-fortiap-id> <new-fortiap-id>
```

Support fixed-length 64-hex digit for WPA-Personal passphrase (381030)

WPA-Personal passphrase now supports a fixed-length of 64 hexadecimal digits.

Allow FortiGates to manage cloud-based FortiAPs (380150)

FortiGates can now manage cloud-based FortiAPs using the new `fapc-compatibility` command under `wireless-controller setting`.

If enabled, default FAP-C wtp-profiles will be added. If disabled, FAP-C related CMDDB configurations will be removed: `wtp-group` in `vap's vlan-pool`, `wtp-group`, `ws`, `wtp`, `wtp-profile`.

CLI syntax

```
config wireless-controller setting
  set country CN
  set fapc-compatibility [enable|disable]
end
```



You will receive an error message when trying to change `country` while `fapc-compatibility` is enabled. You need to disable `fapc-compatibility` before changing to an FAPC unsupported country.

Use IPsec instead of DTLS to protect CAPWAP tunnels (379502)

This feature is to utilize FortiAP hardware to improve the throughput of tunneled data traffic by using IPsec when data security is enabled.

"AES-256-CBC & SHA256" algorithm and "dh_group 15" are used for both CAPWAP IPsec phase1 and phase 2.

FAP320B will not support this feature due to its limited capacity of free flash.

New option added to support only one IP per one endpoint association (378207)

When users change configuration, the `radiusd` will reset all configurations and refresh all logons in the kernel. All these actions are done in the one loop. A CLI option has been added to enable/disable replacement of an old IP address with a new IP address for the same endpoint on RADIUS accounting start.

CLI Syntax

```
configure user radius
  edit radius-root
```

```

        set rsso-ep-one-ip-only [enable|disable]
    next
end

```

FAP-222C-K DFS support (377795)

Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) bands can now be configured for FortiAP 222C-K.

Note that this FortiAP model has the Korean region code (K), but `ap-country` under `config wireless-controller wtp-profile` still needs to be set to KR.

CLI syntax

```

config wireless-controller wtp-profile
  edit <K-FAP222C>
    config platform
      set type <222C>
    end
    set ap-country KR
    config radio-2
      set band <802.11ac>
      set vap-all <disable>
      set vaps "vap-vd-07"
      set channel "52" "56" "60" "64" "100" "104" "108" "112" "116" "120" "124" "128"
        "132" "136" "140"
    end
  next
end

```

Dynamic VLAN support in standalone mode (377298)

Dynamic VLAN is now supported in standalone mode. Previously, dynamic VLAN only worked in local bridge mode.

CLI-only features added to GUI (376891)

Previously CLI-only features have been added to the GUI under **FortiAP Profiles**, **Managed FortiAPs**, and **SSID**. Also fixed issue where the correct value is displayed when viewing the **WIDS Profile** notification icon under **FortiAP Profiles**.

Managed AP GUI update (375376)

Upgraded Managed FortiAPs dialog page to a newer style, including icons for SSID and LAN port.

Bonjour gateway support (373659)

Bonjour gateway now supported for WiFi networks.

Syntax

```

config wireless-controller bonjour-profile
  edit 0
    set comment "comment"
  config policy-list

```

```

edit 1
    set description "description"
    set from-vlan [0-4094] Default is 0.
    set to-vlan [0-4094|all] Default is all.
    set services [all|airplay|afp|bit-
        torrent|ftp|ichat|itunes|printers|samba|scanners|ssh|chromecast]
next
end
next
end

```

FAP421E/423E wave2 support (371374)

Previously removed wave2 FAP421E and FAP423E models have been reinstated and are now supported again. The models are available again through the CLI and GUI. These models are listed under the **Platform** dropdown menu when creating a new FortiAP Profile under **WiFi & Switch Controller > FortiAP Profiles**.

CLI syntax

```

config wireless-controller wtp-profile
edit <example>
config platform
    set type <...|421E|423E>
end
end

```

WiFi Health Monitor GUI changes (308317)

The Wifi Health Monitor page has been improved, including the following changes:

- Flowchart used for diagrams
- Chart used for interference and AP clients
- Removed spectrum analysis
- Added functionality to upgrade FortiAP firmware
- Added option to view both 2.4GHz and 5GHz data simultaneously

AP Profile GUI page updates (298266)

The AP Profile GUI page has been upgraded to a new style including AngularJS code.

1+1 Wireless Controller HA (294656)

Instances of failover between FortiAP units was too long and lead to extended periods of time where WiFi users were without network connection. Because WiFi is considered a primary network connection in today's verticals (including enterprise, retail, education, warehousing, healthcare, government, and more), it is necessary for successful failover to occur as fast as possible.

You can now define the role of the primary and secondary controllers on the FortiAP unit, allowing the unit to decide the order in which the FortiAP selects the FortiGate. This process was previously decided on load-based detection, but can now be defined by each unit's pre-determined priority. In addition, heartbeat intervals have been lowered to further improve FortiAP awareness and successful failover.

Syntax

```

config wireless-controller inter-controller
  set inter-controller-mode {disable | l2-roaming | 1+1} Default is disable.
  set inter-controller-key <password>
  set inter-controller-pri {primary | secondary} Default is primary.
  set fast-failover-max [3-64] Default is 10.
  set fast-failover-wait [10-86400] Default is 10.
  config inter-controller-peer
    edit <name>
      set peer-ip <ip-address>
      set peer-port [1024-49150] Default is 5246.
      set peer-priority {primary | secondary} Default is primary.
    next
  end
end

```

Support for duplicate SSID names on tunnel and bridge mode interfaces (278955)

When `duplicate-ssid` is enabled in the CLI, this feature allows VAPs to use the same SSID name in the same VDOM. When disabled, all SSIDs in WLAN interface will be checked—if duplicate SSIDs exist, an error message will be displayed. When `duplicate-ssid` is enabled in the CLI, duplicate SSID check is removed in "Edit SSID" GUI page.

Syntax

```

config wireless-controller setting
  set duplicate-ssid [enable|disable]
next
end

```

Controlled failover between wireless controllers (249515)

Instances of failover between FortiAP units was too long and lead to extended periods of time where WiFi users were without network connection. Because WiFi is considered a primary network connection in today's verticals (including enterprise, retail, education, warehousing, healthcare, government, and more), it is necessary for successful failover to occur as fast as possible.

Administrators can now define the role of the primary and secondary controllers on the FortiAP unit, allowing the unit to decide the order in which the FortiAP selects the FortiGate. This process was decided on load-based detection, but can now be defined by each unit's pre-determined priority. In addition, heartbeat intervals have been lowered to further improve FortiAP awareness and successful failover.



FORTINET®

High Performance Network Security



Copyright© 2018 Fortinet, Inc. All rights reserved. Fortinet®, FortiGate®, FortiCare® and FortiGuard®, and certain other marks are registered trademarks of Fortinet, Inc., in the U.S. and other jurisdictions, and other Fortinet names herein may also be registered and/or common law trademarks of Fortinet. All other product or company names may be trademarks of their respective owners. Performance and other metrics contained herein were attained in internal lab tests under ideal conditions, and actual performance and other results may vary. Network variables, different network environments and other conditions may affect performance results. Nothing herein represents any binding commitment by Fortinet, and Fortinet disclaims all warranties, whether express or implied, except to the extent Fortinet enters a binding written contract, signed by Fortinet's General Counsel, with a purchaser that expressly warrants that the identified product will perform according to certain expressly-identified performance metrics and, in such event, only the specific performance metrics expressly identified in such binding written contract shall be binding on Fortinet. For absolute clarity, any such warranty will be limited to performance in the same ideal conditions as in Fortinet's internal lab tests. In no event does Fortinet make any commitment related to future deliverables, features, or development, and circumstances may change such that any forward-looking statements herein are not accurate. Fortinet disclaims in full any covenants, representations, and guarantees pursuant hereto, whether express or implied. Fortinet reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice, and the most current version of the publication shall be applicable.